Appendix A
Glossary

Appendix A
Glossary

abiotic—nonliving physical and chemical elements of an environment. Examples include sunlight, temperature, wind, and soil.

activity—for the purposes of the Salinas River Long-Term Management Plan (LTMP), *activities* are management actions that have some direct effect on one or more natural resources but that do not rise to the level of being a project. Examples include field monitoring, moderate vegetation management, and implementation of best management practices.

adaptive capacity—the ability of species and biological communities to adapt to changing environmental conditions (Nicotra et al. 2015).

adaptive management—a method for examining alternative strategies for meeting measurable biological goals and objectives and then, if necessary, adjusting future conservation management actions according to what is learned (65 Federal Register 106 35242–35257).

anadromous—fish that migrate from salt water to fresh water to spawn.

anthropogenic—caused or produced through human agency.

areal cover—see *cover*.

backwater flooding—upstream flooding caused by downstream conditions such as channel restriction and/or high flow in a downstream confluence stream.

bankfull stage—see *bankfull.*

bankfull—the water level or stage at which a stream, river, or lake is at the top of its banks and any further rise would result in water moving into the floodplain. The *bankfull stage* is an established gage height at a given location along a river or stream, above which a rise in water surface will cause the river or stream to overflow the lowest natural stream bank. *Bankfull stage* is not necessarily the same as *flood stage*.

barriers—anything, either natural (i.e., physical, behavioral, chemical) or manmade (e.g., fence, road) that prevents passage or access.

Basin Study—*WaterSMART Basin Study for the Salinas River Basin*.

basin—a groundwater basin or subbasin identified and defined in California Department of Water Resources *Bulletin 118* or as modified pursuant to Chapter 3 of the Water Code (commencing with §10722) (Water Code, Division 6, part 2.74, §10721).

biodiversity—the variety of organisms considered at all levels, from genetic variants of a single species through arrays of species to arrays of genera, families, and higher taxonomic levels; includes the variety of natural communities and ecosystems.

biological opinion—a document that is the product of formal consultation with the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service or National Marine Fisheries Service, stating the opinion of the agency on whether or not a federal action is likely to jeopardize the continued existence of a federally listed species (threatened or endangered) or result in the destruction or adverse modification of critical habitat.

biotic—the living parts of an environment, such as plants, animals, and micro-organisms.

bottomlands—sets of broad benches that bound a riverbed. Also referred to as *bottoms*. Bottomlands can be distinguished between *low bottoms*, which are benches immediately adjacent to the riverbed, and *high bottoms*, which are higher benches representing previous floodplain levels of the river (San Francisco Estuary Institute 2009).

canopy cover—see *cover*.

CEQA species—plant and animal species that are considered endangered, threatened, or rare under the California Environmental Quality Act (CEQA) and thus must be considered in CEQA documents (§670.2 or §670.5, Title 14, California Code of Regulations). See also *endangered species* and *threatened species*.

channel—an open conduit either naturally or artificially created which periodically or continuously contains moving water or forms a connecting link between two bodies of water. *River*, *creek*, *branch*, and *tributary* are some of the terms used to describe natural channels. Natural channels may be single or braided. *Canal* and *floodway* are some of the terms used to describe artificial channels. Also known as a *watercourse*.

compensatory mitigation—the restoration (re-establishment or rehabilitation), establishment (creation), enhancement, and/or in certain circumstances preservation of aquatic resources for the purposes of offsetting unavoidable adverse impacts that remain after all appropriate and practicable avoidance and minimization has been achieved (33 C.F.R. 332.2).

community—land cover types that are grouped together because of similarity in vegetation type, vegetation structure, ecological function, and current land use. The LTMP recognizes three types of communities: natural, semi-natural, and developed. Communities are composed of land cover types.

condition of long-term overdraft—condition of a groundwater basin where the average annual amount of water extracted for a long-term period, generally 10 years or more, exceeds the long-term average annual supply of water to the basin, plus any temporary surplus. Overdraft during a period of drought is not sufficient to establish a condition of long-term overdraft if extractions and recharge are managed as necessary to ensure that reductions in groundwater levels or storage during a period of drought are offset by increases in groundwater levels or storage during other periods (Water Code, Division 6, part 2.74, §10735).

conserve, conserving, conservation—according to the federal Endangered Species Act, *conserve*, *conserving*, and *conservation* are the methods and procedures necessary to bring any endangered or threatened species to the point at which the measures provided under the federal Endangered Species Act are no longer necessary. Such methods and procedures include, but are not limited to, activities associated with resource management such as research, census, law enforcement, habitat acquisition and maintenance, propagation, live trapping, and transportation (16 U.S. Government Code 1532 [3]). According to the Natural Community Conservation Planning Act, *conserve*, *conserving*, and *conservation* are the use of methods and procedures within a plan area that are necessary "to bring any covered species to the point at which the measures provided pursuant to [the California Endangered Species Act] … are not necessary, and for covered species that are not listed pursuant to [the California Endangered Species Act] …, to maintain or enhance the condition of a species so that listing pursuant to [the California Endangered Species Act] …will not become necessary." In other words, the Natural Community Conservation Planning Act defines *conservation* as the steps necessary to remove a species from the California threatened or endangered species list (California Fish and Game Code 2085[d]).

critical habitat—an area designated as critical habitat by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service or by the National Marine Fisheries Service pursuant to the federal Endangered Species Act. Critical habitat areas are specific geographic areas that may or may not be occupied by listed species, that are determined to be essential for the conservation and management of listed species, and that have been formally described and designated in the Federal Register (16 U.S. Government Code 1532 [5]).

ecosystem function—the sum total of processes operating at the ecosystem level, such as the cycling of matter, energy, and nutrients.

ecosystem restoration—the reestablishment of ecological functions within an area that historically supported those functions.

ecosystem services—the benefits that people derive from ecosystems, including both commodities and regulating, supporting, and cultural services.

ecosystem—a community of organisms and their physical environment interacting as an ecological unit.

effectiveness monitoring—the process of tracking the success or failure of a management action.

endangered species—a native species, subspecies, variety of organism, or distinct population segment that is in serious danger of becoming extinct throughout all or a significant portion of its range due to one or more causes, including loss of habitat, change in habitat, overexploitation, predation, competition, or disease (16 U.S. Government Code 1532[6]; California Fish and Game Code Section 2062).

endemic—a species, subspecies, or variety found only in the region defined.

ephemeral stream—a stream that flows only briefly during and after rain events and is normally dry the rest of the year.

eutrophication—the process of excessive nutrient enrichment of a water body that causes excessive algal and plant growth.

extirpated—a species no longer surviving in a region that was once part of its range.

extant—a taxon or population that is still in existence; opposite of *extinct*.

flow prescription—the protocol describing how to release water (at specific flow rates and times) from storage (such as reservoirs) into rivers, generally to provide water for aquatic resources.

flow—in hydrology, the volumetric movement of water past a given point on a stream or river, usually in cubic feet per second.

fluvial geomorphology—study of the interactions between the water and sediment transport processes in rivers and creeks and the landforms and physical shapes created by those processes.

gaining (reach)—a section of stream or river where the local water table is at or above stream level and groundwater moves toward and into the reach.

geomorphology—the science of landforms with an emphasis on their origin, evolution, form, and distribution across the physical landscape.

groundwater recharge (also *recharge*)—the augmentation of groundwater by natural or artificial means (Water Code, Division 6, part 2.74, §10721).

groundwater sustainability agency—one or more local agencies that implement the provisions of part 2.74 of the Water Code. For purposes of imposing fees pursuant to Chapter 8 of the Water Code (commencing with §10730) or taking action to enforce a groundwater sustainability plan, *groundwater sustainability agency* also means each local agency comprising the groundwater sustainability agency if the plan authorizes separate agency action (Water Code, Division 6, part 2.74, §10721).

groundwater sustainability plan—plan of a groundwater sustainability agency proposed or adopted pursuant to part 2.74 of the Water Code (Water Code, Division 6, part 2.74, §10721).

groundwater—water beneath the surface of the earth within the zone below the water table in which the soil is completely saturated with water, not including water that flows in known and definite channels (Water Code, Division 6, part 2.74, §10721).

grower—a person who grows large quantities of a particular plant or crop in order to sell the crop.

habitat—the environmental conditions that support occupancy of a given organism in a specified area (Hall et al. 1997). In both scientific and lay publications, *habitat* is defined in many different ways and for many different purposes. For the purposes of the LTMP, *habitat* is defined as the specific places where the environmental conditions (i.e., physical and biological conditions) are present that are required to support occupancy by individuals or populations of a given species. Habitat may be occupied (i.e., individuals or a population of the species are or have recently been present) or unoccupied.

hydrograph—a graph showing the water level (stage), discharge, or other property of a river or watershed with respect to time.

hydrology—the scientific study of the waters of the earth, especially with relation to the effects of precipitation and evaporation upon the occurrence and character of water in streams, lakes, and below the land surface.

incidental take—any take otherwise prohibited, if such take is incidental to and not the purpose of the carrying out of an otherwise lawful activity (50 C.F.R. 17.3). See also *take*.

invasive species—a species that is nonnative to the ecosystem and whose introduction causes or is likely to cause economic or environmental harm or harm to human health (Executive Order 13112).

land cover type—the dominant character of the land surface discernible from aerial photographs, as determined by the dominant vegetation type, water type, or human use.

land cover—the observed physical cover on the earth's surface. It is used to describe vegetation and human-made features but can also include water surfaces.

land-use designation—the designation, by parcel, in an adopted city or county general plan of the allowable uses.

listed species—a species that is listed as threatened or endangered pursuant to the Endangered Species Act or the California Endangered Species Act. See also *threatened species* and *endangered species*.

Local Area Formation Committee (LAFCO)—public agency with county-wide jurisdiction established by state law. It oversees changes to local government boundaries involving the formation and expansion of cities and special districts. The LAFCO of Monterey County encourages orderly growth of local government agencies, preserves agricultural lands and open space, and discourages urban sprawl.

losing (reach)—a section of river or stream channel where the local groundwater table is below that of the water level in the channel. This results in a net flow of surface water into the groundwater table (percolation).

low-flow channel—the part of a stream channel occupied during periods of low flow.

mainstem—the primary flow channel in a watershed. The mainstem collects flow from tributaries and conveys it to the mouth of the watershed.

management action—a task proposed to meet an associated objective. Actions describe how objectives can be achieved, and a single action can support multiple objectives. For the purposes of the LTMP, actions are divided into one of four categories: research and analysis, planning tasks, projects, and activities.

management area—a geographical area defined by where management activities will be implemented. For the purposes of the LTMP, this area is defined by the portion of the Salinas River watershed in which the Implementing Entity will conduct management actions adopted by this LTMP up to river mile 110 and along the Nacimiento and San Antonio Rivers, ending at their respective reservoirs.

management objective—a clearly defined target that builds toward achieving a goal. Objectives should be measurable and achievable.

mitigation—actions or project design features that reduce environmental impacts by avoiding, minimizing, or compensating for adverse effects (Fulton 1999).

natural community—a collection of species that co-occur in the same habitat or area and interact through trophic and spatial relationships.

nonnative species—a species that is not native to the ecosystem under consideration.

operation (also *reservoir operation* or *river operation*)—the approach by which reservoir releases are managed in order to achieve a desired result in the downstream river (e.g., flood reduction, conservation flows).

peak flow—maximum instantaneous streamflow values recorded at a particular site for a particular time interval.

perennial stream—a stream with year-round surface flow.

planning tasks—for the purposes of the LTMP, planning tasks are a type of management action that calls for additional planning efforts. Planning efforts generally result in development of a document that may require environmental analysis (California Environmental Quality Act) or regulatory permits prior to implementation.

preservation—preventing changes in land use from a natural state by, for example, acquiring land or a conservation easement.

primary productivity—a term used to describe the rate at which plants and other photosynthetic organisms produce organic compounds in an ecosystem. There are two aspects of primary productivity: gross productivity and net productivity.

program goal—an outcome that indicates success of a project or program.

project—for the purposes of the LTMP, projects are a type of management action that require substantial capital or construction. Examples of projects include construction or replacement of water management infrastructure, implementation of large-scale restoration, and land acquisition.

range—the geographic area a species is known or believed to occupy.

reach—a section of a stream.

recharge area—area that supplies water to an aquifer in a groundwater basin (Water Code, Division 6, part 2.74, §10721).

recovery goal—an established goal, usually quantitative, in a U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service or National Marine Fisheries Service recovery plan that identifies when a listed species is restored to a point at which the protections of the federal Endangered Species Act are no longer required.

recovery plan—a document published by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service or by the National Marine Fisheries Service that provides the status of a listed species and the actions necessary to remove the species from the endangered species list.

recovery—the process by which the decline of an endangered or threatened species is arrested or reversed or threats to its survival are neutralized so that its long-term survival in nature can be ensured. Recovery entails actions to achieve the conservation and survival of a species (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service and National Marine Fisheries Service 1996), including actions to prevent any further erosion of a population's viability and genetic integrity, as well as actions to restore or establish environmental conditions that enable a species to persist (i.e., the long-term occurrence of a species through the full range of environmental variation).

reoperation—a change in approach to reservoir or river operation.

research and analyses—for the purposes of the LTMP, a type of management action that calls for new research or new analysis of existing data.

reservoir operation—see *operation*.

riparian habitat or vegetation—vegetation associated with river, stream, or lake banks and floodplains. Also defined by U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (2018) as "Plant communities contiguous to and affected by surface and subsurface hydrologic features of perennial or intermittent lotic and lentic water bodies (i.e., rivers, streams, lakes, or drainage ways). Riparian areas have one or both of the following characteristics: 1) distinctively different vegetation than adjacent areas, 2) species similar to adjacent areas but exhibiting more vigorous or robust growth forms due to the greater availability of surface and subsurface water."

river operation—see *operation*.

Salinas River basin—the area drained aboveground and belowground by the Salinas River.

Salinas River watershed—for the purposes of the LTMP, the land surface that drains to the Salinas River channel (i.e., aboveground) as defined by the U.S. Geological Survey (USGS) Hydrologic Unit Code (HUC)-8 boundary. Includes the Salinas River and its tributaries, which together drain approximately 4,600 square miles of land in Monterey and San Luis Obispo Counties.

Salinas Valley Basin (also *Salinas Valley groundwater basin*)—for the purposes of the LTMP, the belowground aquifers as defined by the California Department of Water Resources *Bulletin 118*.

Salinas Valley groundwater basin—see *Salinas Valley Basin*.

Salinas Valley—one of the major valleys and most productive agricultural regions in California.

significant depletions of interconnected surface waters—reductions in flow or levels of surface water that is hydrologically connected to the basin such that the reduced surface water flow or levels have a significant and unreasonable adverse impact on beneficial uses of the surface water (Water Code, Division 6, part 2.74, §10735).

special-status species—plants and animals that are legally protected under the federal and/or state Endangered Species Acts, or other regulations, and species that are considered sufficiently rare by the scientific community to qualify for such listing.

stage—the level of the water surface of a river or stream above an established datum at a given location.

stream—a watercourse that flows at least periodically or intermittently through a bed or channel having banks. This may include watercourses having a surface or subsurface flow that supports or has supported riparian vegetation, fish, or other aquatic life.

study area—a geographical area for which data are analyzed in a report or map. For the purposes of the LTMP, this area includes all HUC-10 watersheds where the HUC-10 watersheds have a confluence with the Salinas River at or downstream of the confluence of the Nacimiento River. The LTMP study area is defined as the management area, plus all associated watersheds.

subbasin—a structural geologic feature where a larger basin is divided into a series of small basins in reference to groundwater supply. For the purposes of the LTMP, *subbasin* is used within the context of California Department of Water Resource–defined basins.

substrate—the surface or material on or from which an organism lives, grows, or obtains its nourishment.

subwatersheds—a smaller area of tributaries that drain into a larger area. Typically corresponds to the USGS HUC-10 boundary.

sustainable groundwater management—the management and use of groundwater in a manner that can be maintained during the planning and implementation horizon without causing undesirable results (Water Code, Division 6, part 2.74, §10721).

sustainable yield—the maximum quantity of water, calculated over a base period representative of long-term conditions in the basin and including any temporary surplus, that can be withdrawn annually from a groundwater supply without causing an undesirable result (Water Code, Division 6, part 2.74, §10721).

take—according to the federal Endangered Species Act (16 U.S. Government Code 1532 [19]), *take* means to harass, harm, pursue, hunt, shoot, wound, kill, trap, capture, or collect, or to attempt to engage in any such conduct. According to California Fish and Game Code (California Fish and Game Code Section 86), *take* means to hunt, pursue, catch, capture, or kill, or to attempt to hunt, pursue, catch, capture, or kill. See also *incidental take*.

threatened species—a native species, subspecies, variety, or distinct population segment of an organism that, although not presently threatened with extinction, is likely to become an endangered species in the foreseeable future throughout all of a significant portion of its range (16 U.S. Government Code 1532 [5], California Fish and Game Code Section 2067).

tributary—a river or stream flowing into a larger river or lake.

undesirable result—one or more of the following effects caused by groundwater conditions occurring throughout the basin.

1. Chronic lowering of groundwater levels indicating a significant and unreasonable depletion of supply if continued over the planning and implementation horizon. Overdraft during a period of drought is not sufficient to establish a chronic lowering of groundwater levels if extractions and groundwater recharge are managed as necessary to ensure that reductions in groundwater levels or storage during a period of drought are offset by increases in groundwater levels or storage during other periods.
2. Significant and unreasonable reduction of groundwater storage.
3. Significant and unreasonable seawater intrusion.
4. Significant and unreasonable degraded water quality, including the migration of contaminant plumes that impair water supplies.
5. Significant and unreasonable land subsidence that substantially interferes with surface land uses.
6. Depletions of interconnected surface water that have significant and unreasonable adverse impacts on beneficial uses of the surface water (Water Code, Division 6, part 2.74, §10721).

watershed— land area or topographic region that drains into a particular stream, river or lake. Typically corresponds to the USGS HUC-8 boundary.

water budget—an accounting of the total groundwater and surface water entering and leaving a basin including the changes in the amount of water stored (Water Code, Division 6, part 2.74, §10721).

water year—the period from October 1 through the following September 30, inclusive (Water Code, Division 6, part 2.74, §10721). For example, water year 2018 started October 1, 2017, and continued to September 30, 2018.

Waters of the United States—generally defined as streams and wetlands that connect to navigable waterways. The Code of Federal Regulations Title 33 Part 328 (33 C.F.R 328) defines Waters of the United States as it applies to the jurisdictional limits of the authority of the U.S. Army Corps of

Engineers under the Clean Water Act. *Navigable waters* is a term used within the Waters of the United States definition. Navigable waters are defined in 33 C.F.R 329.

Waters of the state—Under California Water Code Section 13050 (e), any surface water or groundwater, including saline waters, within the boundaries of the state.

watercourse—a body of water that flows at least periodically or intermittently through a bed or channel having banks. This may include bodies of water having a surface or subsurface flow that supports or has supported riparian vegetation, fish, or other aquatic life.

watershed—an entire geographical area of land where precipitation collects and drains to a common outlet.

Literature Cited

Fulton, W. 1999. Guide to California Planning, Solano Press, Ventura, California.

Hall, L. S., P. R. Krausman, and M. L. Morrison. 1997. The habitat concept and a plea for standard terminology. Wildlife Society Bulletin 1997, 25(1):173-182.

Nicotra, A. B., D. L. Segal, G. L. Hoyle, A. W. Schrey, K. J. F. Verhoeven, and C. L. Richards. Adaptive plasticity and epigenetic variation in response to warming in an Alpine plant. Ecology and Evolution 2015; 5(3): 634-647. January.

San Francisco Estuary Institute. 2009. Historical Ecology Reconnaissance for the Lower Salinas River. Prepared for The Nature Conservancy. Monterey County Project. August 2009.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 2018. Riparian Product Summary. Available: https://www.fws.gov/wetlands/other/Riparian-Product-Summary.html. Accessed: February 13, 2019.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service and National Marine Fisheries Service. 1996. Final Handbook on Habitat Conservation Planning and Incidental Take Permitting Process. Appendix 5. December.

Appendix B

Salinas River Long-Term Management Plan Stakeholder Issues Assessment Report

Salinas River Long-Term Management Plan Stakeholder Issue Assessment

Developed by Associate Julia Golomb, Senior Mediator Gina Bartlett, Senior Associate Laura Sneeringer, and Associate Stephanie Horii, Consensus Building Institute
September 2018

Summary of Findings

In spring 2018, the Consensus Building Institute, an impartial nonprofit that helps groups collaborate, conducted a stakeholder issue assessment on developing a Long-Term Management Plan for the Salinas River. CBI's role is to *help facilitate* local decision-making, recommending and leading a process that brings together all affected parties in productive dialogue to develop the Long-Term Management Plan (LTMP).

To understand and reflect the range of perspectives and to develop recommendations for the process to develop a LTMP, CBI conducted 20 in-depth interviews with 28 individuals from a range of stakeholder interests in the Salinas Valley, including agencies, agriculture, community representatives, environmental, lagoon and stream maintenance specialists, landowners, and water resources managers. Interviews were confidential (to foster candor) and were conducted either in-person or by phone. A list of those interviewed as part of the formal assessment process, as well as the interview protocol, is in the appendix.

Given the importance of the Salinas River to the region's environment and economy, CBI's methodology is grounded in three core principles: (1) being comprehensive in soliciting input from the range of potentially impacted stakeholders; (2) being transparent in the feedback and recommendations provided; and (3) drawing on CBI's experience and best practices to recommend an approach likely to foster effective and inclusive deliberations. This document presents CBI's assessment findings and recommendations for a transparent, inclusive process to develop a LTMP for the Salinas River.

Please note that CBI did not attempt to independently validate the claims or concerns of the interviewees. Rather, this document seeks to summarize the range of views, ideas, and concerns expressed. Additionally, this brief document cannot do justice to the deep knowledge, experience, and nuances of ideas and concepts that stakeholders shared. Rather, the document tries to reflect back key themes and concerns that help shape the way forward. CBI has sought to present these findings, in its role as an impartial facilitator, as accurately and fairly as possible. Any errors or omissions are the sole responsibility of CBI.

Findings

The following summarizes findings from interviews conducted by the Consensus Building Institute. Findings reflect a range of feedback on LTMP development, the process, challenges and critical issues.

Key Issues

The Salinas River is the lifeblood of the Valley. As one interviewee observed, "The river is essential to everyone but in different forms." The people of the Salinas Valley depend on the Salinas River for a variety of economic and ecological benefits. **Stakeholders suggest that** effective management of the Salinas River depends on establishing a shared understanding of the broad range of benefits and risks to be addressed through the LTMP, as well as a shared vision of a sustainable future for the Salinas River and the Salinas River Valley.

"The river is essential to everyone but in different forms."

It is important to expand the scale of river maintenance and engage all property owners in implementation. Interviewees noted that a piecemeal approach to river management and stream maintenance is inadequate, as landowners that do not conduct river management work undermine the efforts of property owners who do. To support full landowner participation in river management, it may be important to streamline permitting processes and to simplify and incorporate incentives into regulations. This could also entail improving alignment of regulations and permitting requirements across the various regulatory and management agencies.

Some interviewees note a valuable opportunity to link LTMP development with local groundwater sustainability planning efforts. Stakeholders emphasize the need to look at all water in the Salinas Valley as part of a single system. Many encourage expanding the conversation around the Salinas River to consider how the river and groundwater interact as part of the same system, with hydrogeology that links river flows and groundwater recharge.

"We need a model for our future that creates a path forward, a success story from elsewhere that is applicable to this context."

"We need a model for our future that creates a path forward, a success story from elsewhere that is applicable to this context." Interviewees remarked that landowners may come to the process with the perspective that the LTMP creates more work and negative impacts for them. "We need to disrupt that mentality by presenting a much broader, united vision," observed an interviewee. Some interviewees suggest beginning with a success story from elsewhere or from one of the existing river management units and from there establishing a shared vision of future possibilities for the river. With a shared vision, local stakeholders believe they can shift away from making decisions based solely on personal self-interest and toward collectively beneficial resource decisions.

Sound, accessible scientific and technical information is key to building a shared path forward and dissuading misconceptions as they arise. Many interviewees spoke to the importance of working with scientific and technical information that is both robust and accessible. One interviewee noted, "We need good information that is presented in a very user-friendly way but not dumbed down." Interviewees suggest that the planning process begin with educating interested parties, thereby establishing a shared baseline vocabulary and technical and spatial understanding. An interviewee observed that when establishing the stream maintenance program, "Once people had maps in their hands and a list of terms, it completely changed the conversation to one that was far more productive." Some interviewees also note the importance of utilizing and validating local knowledge by asking growers to provide feedback on models and visuals. Further, an interviewee advises utilizing data to politely correct misconceptions among the broader public.

Models and other scientific information can help define areas of planned flooding and habitat along the river. Interviewees point to the following information needs:

- Hydrogeological models to understand recharge and how the river behaves under certain circumstances
- Data on the positive impacts of the stream maintenance program to-date
- Species: What have we learned about species to-date, what are key considerations and what species might no longer need to be listed as threatened or endangered
- Study the best approach to water releases
- Wetland development
- A high resolution digital image of the river corridor may be useful
- Map of areas that flood and under what conditions
- Viability of flood management options

"We need good information that is presented in a very user-friendly way but not dumbed down."

Interviewees highlight a range of issues to be addressed in the Salinas River Long-Term Management Plan. Key issues include:

- Flow management (systems for dam releases, timing of river maintenance work, and opportunities to better align the two), with a primary focus of improving flow conditions on key tributaries
- Water supply, storage, and transfer
- Water quality management
- Sediment management and gravel mining
- Opportunities to utilize bursts from Arroyo Seco and headwaters
- Clarity around biological opinion requirements
- Lagoon management, including sandbar management
- Flooding
- Invasive species

- Habitat management, including managing habitat for fish and endangered species
- Fisheries and riparian corridor protection
- Food safety (related to wildlife in agricultural areas)
- Vegetation management
- Fish passage
- Saltwater intrusion

For some stakeholders, the health of steelhead populations serves as an indicator of the environmental health of the broader river system; however, issues related to releases and timing for steelhead may figure more centrally in future development of a Habit Conservation Plan.

Some interviewees warn that maintaining a focused planning effort may prove challenging, given the range of issues and interests. Key to success is clarity around objectives for management plan development.

Many stakeholders seek a long-term balance between environmental and agricultural interests. Interviewees express the importance of managing for a healthy river system that protects clean water, fish, and wildlife while simultaneously streamlining the regulatory landscape for agriculturalists.

Varied perspectives exist on how best to manage for flooding and other impacts to landowners adjacent to the river. Some stakeholders point to a need for the river to flood more than it has been allowed to in recent years while other stakeholders prefer to minimize or closely manage flooding. Given that some degree of flooding will continue to be a part of the system, many find it important to designate areas where flooding should occur, particularly wetland areas. Several interviewees express concern that flooding disperses pesticide rich soil and other chemicals throughout the system at significant cost to the environment and growers.

Varied perspectives expressed on funding LTMP implementation. Some believe that costs associated with LTMP implementation should be carried regionally rather than by individual property owners. Interviewees identified both fixed funding opportunities (e.g., grants) and ongoing funding accrual (e.g., tax system) as potential measures. Given that the environmental and economic benefits of effective river management are regional and substantial, interviewees suggest finding creative approaches to regionally share the costs of implementation.

Stakeholders articulate the following keys to success:

- Interviewees readily talk about historic tensions and sources of distrust in the region that the process must manage. For example, some environmentalists lack trust in the process and program.
- Take time to understand needs from a range of perspectives, including environmental and agricultural. Encourage agency staff to listen deeply to the range of perspectives and concerns. Likewise, stakeholders who are

open-minded and committed to collaboration are crucial, especially given the short timeline for plan development.
- Critical to engage private property owner representatives that have influence, enthusiasm, and hesitation at the table. Trusted messengers and success stories can help pique engagement by reticent landowners over time.
- Build trust by focusing on areas where there is some agreement (win/wins) before turning to areas of disagreement.
- Use a scientific approach to identify key management areas.
- Clarify objectives and set ground rules.
- Important to manage varied scales of expectations among stakeholders; some are concerned about specific flood areas and lagoon management while others are focused on the big picture.

Consensus Building Institute Process Recommendations

Create a Transparent, Inclusive Collaborative Process for LTMP development
Stakeholders are broadly unified on several core aspects related to a process for developing a LTMP. It must be transparent. It must be inclusive. It must be accompanied by broad outreach. And it should draw on the best available data.

Many stakeholders are looking to CBI to draw on its expertise and experience elsewhere, while also drawing lessons from successful local collaborative planning efforts, to put forward a recommended approach. With this is in mind, CBI has crafted recommendations structured to achieve the following:
- Ensure ongoing opportunities for meaningful public input and dialogue
- Balance the need for broad participation with the imperative for focused and effective technical conversations
- Foster cross-interest group discussions on all aspects of LTMP development and implementation to ensure participants understand and integrate each other's interests and concerns
- Provide sufficient time for thoughtful deliberations without exhausting people's time and resources
- Achieve agreements and reach outcomes in a timely manner

Closely coordinate with existing efforts, including development of the Salinas Valley Basin Groundwater Sustainability Plan, reservoir operations (Salinas Valley Water Project), and the Stream Management Program.

Convene a Stakeholder Planning Group
CBI recommends that the Monterey County Water Resources Agency convene a broad planning group that shapes the overall Long-Term Management Plan, including its goals and key components. The planning group would have a set membership, with broad representation of interests. The goal of the planning group would be to contribute substantially to the LTMP content while building support and understanding for the LTMP and its implementation. The planning group would meet several times over the next six months to guide LTMP development. Meetings

would be open to the public. CBI would work with the Water Resources Agency and stakeholders to develop recommendation on the planning group composition. CBI advises active inclusion of the following stakeholder interest groups in the planning group:

- Agriculture
- Environmental interests focused on birds, fish or aquatic species, habitat, and plants
- Landowners along different reaches of the river
- Regulatory agencies
- Scientific community
- Stream maintenance and lagoon management expertise
- Water operations and groundwater

Convene a Small Technical Design Team

Based on stakeholder input, CBI recommends establishing a small and nimble technical design team to guide the planning effort. The technical design team would provide detailed input on the technical and scientific information going into the plan and recommend when scientific experts might need to meet to inform the planning effort. The technical design team would identify permitting needs and coordinate with landowners. The technical design team would help prepare materials for the planning group, identifying key questions for planning group consideration. CBI would suggest that experts on the following engage in the technical design team:

- MCWRA staff
- Invasive species / plants
- Lagoon management
- Stream maintenance and landowner engagement
- Groundwater planning
- Specialists on endangered or threatened species
- Permitting

Design and Implement a Public Engagement Plan

Given the importance and level of interest in the future of the Salinas River, CBI recommends designing and implementing a public engagement plan and suite of activities to create transparency and information about LTMP development for the general public, including Spanish-language materials to reach Spanish-speaking communities. Translating technical information such that it is clear and accessible to the general public is of critical importance to deepening understanding of the importance and role of long-term river management.

Conclusion

The overarching goal of this effort is to reach widespread support on developing a Long-Term Management Plan for the Salinas River. The keys to success are creating a transparent, inclusive process that engages interested stakeholders while simultaneously forming a nimble technical work group that can efficiently and effectively address a range of issues and balance interests. A viable and broadly supported LTMP is the essential first step toward a future Salinas River that supports robust ecosystems and a vibrant economy.

About the Consensus Building Institute

Founded in 1993, the Consensus Building Institute improves the way that community and organizational leaders collaborate to make decisions, achieve agreements, and manage multi-party conflicts and planning efforts. A nationally and internationally recognized not-for-profit organization, CBI provides collaborative problem solving, mediation and highly-skilled facilitation for state and federal agencies, non-profits, communities, and international development agencies around the world. CBI senior staff are affiliated with the MIT-Harvard Public Disputes Program and the MIT Department of Urban Studies and Planning. Learn more about CBI at: www.cbi.org

Appendix A: List of Persons Interviewed

Interviews alphabetized by last name of interviewee.

1. John Ballie, Landowner
2. Devin Best, Upper Salinas/Las Tablas Resource Conservation District
3. Don Bullard and Phil Humphrey, Nacimiento Regional Water Management Advisory Committee
4. Chris Bunn, Salinas River Management Unit Association
5. Ross Clark and Kevin O'Connor, Central Coast Wetlands Group at Moss Landing Marine Laboratories
6. Darlene Din, Salinas River Channel Coalition
7. Melissa Duflock, Landowner
8. Ken Ekeland, Monterey County Water Resources Agency Board of Directors
9. Tim Frahm, Trout Unlimited
10. Norm Groot, Monterey County Farm Bureau
11. Dale Huss, Ocean Mist and Sea Mist Farms
12. Jerry Lohr, Eric Morgan, Allan, Roger Maitoso, Michael Griva, Curtis Weeks and Steve McIntyre, Salinas Valley Water Coalition
13. Donna Meyers, Salinas River Management Unit Association
14. Joanne Nissen, Landowner
15. Amy Palkovic, California Department of Parks and Recreation
16. Gary Petersen, Salinas Valley Basin Groundwater Sustainability Agency
17. Deidre Sullivan, Monterey County Water Resources Agency Board of Directors
18. Steve Shimek, Monterey Coast Keeper and The Otter Project
19. Dennis Sites, Salinas Valley Sustainable Water Group
20. Abby Taylor Silva, Grower-Shipper Association

Appendix B: Interview Protocol

Assessment Questions
Developed by Gina Bartlett and Julia Golomb, Consensus Building Institute
May 1, 2018

The Monterey County Water Resources Agency is developing a long-term management plan for the Salinas River this year. The plan will address a range of issues and projects on the river, including stream maintenance, lagoon management, steelhead habitat and population, and associated regulatory compliance. The Consensus Building Institute is conducting a series of interviews to better understand stakeholder perspectives on issues and concerns and the best way to shape the planning process to benefit from stakeholder expertise and ultimately create an effective long-term management plan.

Introductions
Confidentiality: *CBI Facilitators will use what we discuss to report back findings without attributing it to interviewee personally; anything that interviewee wishes to stay confidential will remain between the facilitator and interviewee.*

Please tell us about your history of involvement and interests related to the Salinas River.

Salinas River and Planning
When you look ahead 10, 25, or 50 years from now, how would you like to be able to describe the Salinas River?

What key issues or concerns would you like to see the plan address?

What issues do you anticipate others might raise?

What value does the Salinas River provide to you individually and to the Valley?

What conflicts would you envision might emerge when developing the plan? And, how might you envision resolving those issues? Where do you see opportunities for mutual gain?

What is the best way to take advantage of the strong interest in the river (among different landowners and stakeholders) during implementation?
Given that much of the Salinas River is privately owned, what are some options for funding projects? What role might private landowners play during plan implementation?

What kinds of information might be needed to support development of the long term management plan?

Who would have credibility to provide that technical information?

Stakeholder Engagement
CBI has been hired to facilitate a small technical team and a planning group to help guide development of the management plan and to organize a broader public outreach process.

- What composition might you recommend for the small technical team or planning group (interests, # of people, etc.)?
- Who might you recommend serve on the planning group?
- Who might be able to represent your interests?

- As the stakeholder engagement process comes together to work on developing the long-term management plan, how would you like to be involved?

Conclusion
Is there anything else that you haven't mentioned? What advice would you offer or what else would you recommend to move this effort forward?

Who else, if anyone, would you recommend that I interview on these issues?

Appendix C
Watersheds in the Study Area

Table C-1. Watersheds in the Study Area

HUC 8 Watershed			HUC 10 Watershed			HUC 12 Watershed		
ID	Name	Area	ID	Name	Area	ID	Name	Area
18060004	Estrella	950	1806000401	Upper San Juan Creek	257	180600040101	Big Spring	29
						180600040102	Barrett Creek–San Juan Creek	38
						180600040103	Rogers Creek–San Juan Creek	54
						180600040104	Placer Creek–San Juan Creek	27
						180600040105	Navajo Creek	37
						180600040106	Sandy Canyon	19
						180600040107	Carnaza Creek–San Juan Creek	52
18060004	Estrella	950	1806000402	Cholame Creek	237	180600040201	Little Cholame Creek	41
						180600040202	Headwaters Cholame Creek	28
						180600040203	Cottonwood Creek	22
						180600040204	Upper Cholame Creek	41
						180600040205	180600040205	20
						180600040206	Middle Cholame Creek	36
						180600040207	Lower Cholame Creek	49
18060004	Estrella	950	1806000403	Lower San Juan Creek	179	180600040301	Long Canyon–San Juan Creek	56
						180600040302	Shell Creek	53
						180600040303	Gillis Canyon–San Juan Creek	33
						180600040304	McDonald Canyon–San Juan Creek	36
18060004	Estrella	950	1806000404	Estrella River	278	180600040401	Indian Creek	48
						180600040402	McMillan Canyon–Estrella River	37
						180600040403	Shimmin Canyon	22
						180600040404	Mason Canyon	16
						180600040405	Pine Creek–Estrella River	35
						180600040406	Hog Canyon	23
						180600040407	Keyes Canyon–Estrella River	35
						180600040408	Ranchito Canyon	23
						180600040409	San Jacinto Creek	18
						180600040410	Town of Estrella–Estrella River	21

HUC 8 Watershed			HUC 10 Watershed			HUC 12 Watershed		
ID	Name	Area	ID	Name	Area	ID	Name	Area
18060005	Salinas	3329	1806000501	Santa Margarita Lake–Salinas River	112	180600050101	Pozo Creek	19
						180600050102	Big Spring–Salinas River	50
						180600050103	Toro Creek–Salinas River	19
						180600050104	San Margarita Lake–Salinas River	24
18060005	Salinas	3329	1806000502	Santa Margarita Creek–Salinas River	128	180600050201	Rinconada Creek	16
						180600050202	Santa Margarita Creek	37
						180600050203	Pilitas Creek–Salinas River	36
						180600050204	Atascadero Creek	20
						180600050205	Paloma Creek–Salinas River	20
18060005	Salinas	3329	1806000503	Huerhuero Creek	162	180600050301	East Branch Huerhuero Creek	16
						180600050302	Middle Branch Huerhuero Creek	27
						180600050303	180600050303	18
						180600050304	Upper Huerhuero Creek	36
						180600050305	180600050305	18
						180600050306	Dry Creek	23
						180600050307	Lower Huerhuero Creek	24
18060005	Salinas	3329	1806000504	Paso Robles Creek–Salinas River	209	180600050401	Santa Rita Creek	20
						180600050402	Paso Robles Creek	47
						180600050403	Graves Creek–Salinas River	24
						180600050404	Town of Templeton–Salinas River	30
						180600050405	Mustard Creek–Salinas River	43
						180600050406	San Marcos Creek	28
						180600050407	Bridge Canyon–Salinas River	17
18060005	Salinas	3329	1806000505	Big Sandy Creek	85	180600050501	Sheehee Spring	17
						180600050502	Upper Big Sandy Creek	33
						180600050503	Lower Big Sandy Creek	35

HUC 8 Watershed			HUC 10 Watershed			HUC 12 Watershed		
ID	Name	Area	ID	Name	Area	ID	Name	Area
18060005	Salinas	3329	1806000506	Nacimiento River	372	180600050601	San Miguel Creek–Nacimiento River	45
						180600050602	Los Burros Creek	29
						180600050603	Stony Creek–Nacimiento River	33
						180600050604	El Piojo Creek	16
						180600050605	Little Burnett Creek	25
						180600050606	Salmon Creek–Nacimiento River	45
						180600050607	Town Spring	18
						180600050608	Las Tablas Creek	49
						180600050609	Kavanaugh Creek–Nacimiento River	32
						180600050610	Nacimiento Reservoir–Nacimiento River	34
						180600050611	180600050611–Nacimiento River	47
18060005	Salinas	3329	1806000507	San Antonio River	345	180600050701	North Fork San Antonio River	21
						180600050702	Headwaters San Antonio River	19
						180600050703	Mission Creek	20
						180600050704	Forest Creek–San Antonio River	43
						180600050705	Jolon Creek	31
						180600050706	Squirrel Spring–San Antonio River	32
						180600050707	Sam Jones Canyon–San Antonio River	46
						180600050708	Deer Creek–San Antonio River	31
						180600050709	Harris Creek	16
						180600050710	San Antonio Reservoir–San Antonio River	63
						180600050711	Kemp Canyon–San Antonio River	21
18060005	Salinas	3329	1806000508	Indian Valley–Salinas River	261	180600050801	Vineyard Canyon	52
						180600050802	Portuguese Canyon–Salinas River	52
						180600050803	Hames Creek	45
						180600050804	Sargent Creek	53
						180600050805	Lynch Canyon	21
						180600050806	Los Lobos Springs–Salinas River	38

HUC 8 Watershed			HUC 10 Watershed			HUC 12 Watershed		
ID	Name	Area	ID	Name	Area	ID	Name	Area
18060005	Salinas	3329	1806000509	Lewis Creek	131	180600050901	North Fork Lewis Creek	21
						180600050902	Upper Lewis Creek	17
						180600050903	Middle Lewis Creek	23
						180600050904	Bitterwater Creek	30
						180600050905	Lower Lewis Creek	39
18060005	Salinas	3329	1806000510	San Lorenzo Creek	130	180600051001	Headwaters San Lorenzo Creek	31
						180600051002	Upper San Lorenzo Creek	30
						180600051003	Middle San Lorenzo Creek	40
						180600051004	Lower San Lorenzo Creek	29
18060005	Salinas	3329	1806000511	Pancho Rico Creek–Salinas River	360	180600051101	Pancho Rico Creek	61
						180600051102	Pine Creek	39
						180600051103	Garrissere Canyon–Salinas River	48
						180600051104	Coyote Canyon–Salinas River	37
						180600051105	Espinosa Canyon–Salinas River	29
						180600051106	Long Valley	31
						180600051107	Wildhorse Canyon	18
						180600051108	Sweetwater Canyon	21
						180600051109	Quinado Canyon	31
						180600051110	Hamilton Canyon–Salinas River	46
18060005	Salinas	3329	1806000512	Chalone Creek	142	180600051201	Bear Valley	25
						180600051202	Upper Chalone Creek	32
						180600051203	Topo Creek	39
						180600051204	Middle Chalone Creek	25
						180600051205	Lower Chalone Creek	21

HUC 8 Watershed			HUC 10 Watershed			HUC 12 Watershed		
ID	Name	Area	ID	Name	Area	ID	Name	Area
18060005	Salinas	3329	1806000513	Arroyo Seco	297	180600051301	Lost Valley Creek	25
						180600051302	Tassajara Creek	28
						180600051303	Roosevelt Creek–Arroyo Seco	31
						180600051304	Santa Lucia Creek	18
						180600051305	Calaboose Creek–Piney Creek	16
						180600051306	Paloma Creek–Piney Creek	42
						180600051307	Horse Creek–Arroyo Seco	35
						180600051308	Vaqueros Creek	22
						180600051309	Sweetwater Creek–Arroyo Seco	24
						180600051310	Reliz Creek	24
						180600051311	Paraiso Springs–Arroyo Seco	31
18060005	Salinas	3329	1806000514	Stonewall Creek–Salinas River	180	180600051401	Pine Canyon	16
						180600051402	Monroe Creek–Salinas River	52
						180600051403	Agua Grande Canyon–Salinas River	60
						180600051404	Stonewall Creek	16
						180600051405	Shirttail Gulch–Salinas River	36
18060005	Salinas	3329	1806000515	El Toro Creek–Salinas River	415	180600051501	Lasher Canyon–Salinas River	31
						180600051502	McCoy Creek–Salinas River	62
						180600051503	Limekiln Creek–Salinas River	41
						180600051504	Chualar Creek	28
						180600051505	Johnson Creek	47
						180600051506	Quial Creek	17
						180600051507	180600051507–Salinas River	33
						180600051508	El Toro Creek	42
						180600051509	Alisal Creek–Salinas River	113
18060015	Monterey Bay	757	1806001501	Tembladero Slough	112	180600150101	Mud Creek–Gabilan Creek	28
						180600150102	Natividad Creek–Gabilan Creek	29
						180600150103	Alisal Slough–Tembladero Slough	56

HUC 8 Watershed			HUC 10 Watershed			HUC 12 Watershed		
ID	Name	Area	ID	Name	Area	ID	Name	Area
18060015	Monterey Bay	757	1806001503	Monterey Bay	509	180600150301	Elkhorn Slough	71
						180600150304	Canyon Del Rey	20
						180600150305	Monterey Bay	351

Appendix D
Community and Land Cover Mapping Methods

Appendix D
Community and Land Cover Mapping Methods

The *Salinas River Long-Term Management Plan* (LTMP) uses the terms *community* and *land cover type* to classify and describe the biological setting of the study area. The term *community* means land cover types that are grouped together because of similarity in vegetation type, vegetation structure, ecological function, and current land use. The LTMP recognizes three types of communities: natural communities, semi-natural communities, and non-natural communities. Natural communities are an assemblage of species (plant and animal) that co-occur in the same habitat or area and interact through trophic and spatial relationships. Communities are typically characterized by reference to one or more dominant species. Communities are composed of land cover types.

A *land cover type* is defined as the dominant character of the land surface discernible from aerial photographs and, in some cases, from local knowledge, as determined by the dominant vegetation type, water type, or human use. Land cover types are the most widely used units in analyzing ecosystem function and the diversity of habitats for native species. Land cover data are crucial for developing species distribution models, a key component of regional habitat conservation plans. While many other factors influence whether a species will occupy an area, land cover is often one of the most important.

Land cover data are an essential component of conservation planning. Across the LTMP study area, several land cover datasets have been developed recently at various scales and levels of resolution. This appendix outlines the process used to identify the best available land cover data for the LTMP study area and describes how these data were merged to create a single land cover dataset for the LTMP.

D.1 Dataset Inventory

Thoroughly inventorying available land cover data is the first step toward identifying a suitable land cover dataset. We conducted the inventory at several scales, as follows.

- National land cover datasets. The U.S. Geological Survey and U.S. Forest Service are the primary agencies conducting land cover mapping at the national level where the mapping is made publicly available.
- Statewide land cover datasets. In California, the California Department of Forestry and Fire Protection is the primary agency gathering statewide land cover data. The California Department of Fish and Wildlife also gathers land cover data but mostly at a regional scale.
- Regional and local datasets. Regional datasets may cover portions of multiple counties, while local datasets will largely fall within one or two counties. These datasets are often developed by federal and state agencies but are also developed by local agencies such as regional habitat conservation plan implementing entities, counties, open space agencies, or large water agencies. Nonprofit conservation organizations also develop regional and local datasets of land cover for some parts of California.

Table D-1 lists the land cover datasets identified as overlapping the study area partially or completely, along with the relevant characteristics of each dataset.

Table D-1. Inventory of Land Cover Data within the Study Area

Name	Source	Aerial Photography	Published	Extent	Resolution
Salinas River Vegetation	TNC and AIS	2005 NAIP	2008	0.25-mile buffer of Salinas River plus tributaries	Common and widespread vegetation units were delineated to an MMU of approximately 0.25 acre (0.1 hectare). Small wetlands and forest openings were delineated in several instances below 0.25 acre (0.1 hectare).
Salinas Generalized Land Use/Land Cover Mapping	TNC, AIS, and Stanford University	2005 and 2012 NAIP	2014	1-mile buffer of Salinas River where it surrounds the agricultural area of the valley	0.5-acre (0.2-hectare) MMU for riparian and agriculture types and 1-acre (0.4-hectare) MMU for all upland, urban, or other land cover types
Salinas River Arundo	California Invasive Plant Council and others	Unknown	2014	Unknown	Unknown
Pinnacles National Monument	National Park Service, NatureServe, California Native Plant Society, AIS, and California Department of Fish and Wildlife	2003 and 2005 photography and 2002 NAIP	2012	Pinnacles National Park	1.25-acre (0.5-hectare) MMU
CALVEG	U.S. Forest Service	1997–2013	1997–2013	Large portions of California	2.5-acre (1-hectare) MMU for contrasting vegetation conditions based on cover type. No minimum mapping unit for lakes and conifer plantations.
Fire Resource and Assessment Program Vegetation	California Department of Forestry and Fire Protection	Various	2015	Statewide	323-square-foot (30-square-meter) MMU
National Land Cover Database	U.S. Geological Survey	2009	2013	Nationwide	30-square-foot (3-square-meter) MMU
Farmland Mapping and Monitoring Program	California Department of Conservation	2014	2016	Statewide	10 acres (4 hectares)

Abbreviations: AIS = Aerial Information Systems; MMU = minimum mapping unit; NAIP = National Agriculture Imagery Program; TNC = The Nature Conservancy

D.2 Selecting Datasets

Datasets based on the most recent field mapping or imagery and with the smallest minimum mapping unit are most desirable because they represent current conditions most accurately and precisely; the dataset's mapped features and the geographic extent are also important (Table D-1). Table D-2 lists the datasets selected based on the factors listed in Table D-1, including recent data, geographic extent, and resolution. Datasets in Table D-2 are listed in the order they were combined. For example, the Salinas River Arundo dataset (California Invasive Plant Council 2014) was applied first, then the Salinas Generalized Land Use/Land Cover Mapping (The Nature Conservancy et al. 2014) was applied, but only in the study area locations that were not mapped by the Salinas River Arundo dataset. That is, the Salinas River Arundo dataset takes priority over the Salinas Generalized Land Use/Land Cover Mapping. The remaining datasets are applied, in this manner, until the entire study area is covered by an existing vegetation dataset. Figure 1 shows the distribution of datasets used within the study area and which dataset has priority in which portion of the study area.

Table D-2. Land Cover Datasets Used, Priority, and Rationale

Priority	Dataset	Rationale
1	Salinas River Arundo (California Invasive Plant Council 2014)	Most detailed and current representation of *Arundo donax*, an invasive species targeted for removal as part of the LTMP
2	Salinas Generalized Land Use/Land Cover Mapping (The Nature Conservancy et al. 2014)	Relatively small minimum mapping unit that focuses on Salinas River area; more recent than the other Salinas River dataset
3	Vegetation—Salinas River (The Nature Conservancy and Aerial Information Systems 2008)	Most recent and detailed data outside of priority dataset 2.
4	Existing Vegetation Mid Region 5 Central Coast—CALVEG (U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service 2017)	Provides coverage for most of the study area but less detail than priority datasets 1–3
5	Fire Resource and Assessment Program Vegetation (California Department of Forestry and Fire Protection 2015)	Used to fill in remaining gaps in study area; for a statewide dataset, it is relatively current and detailed.

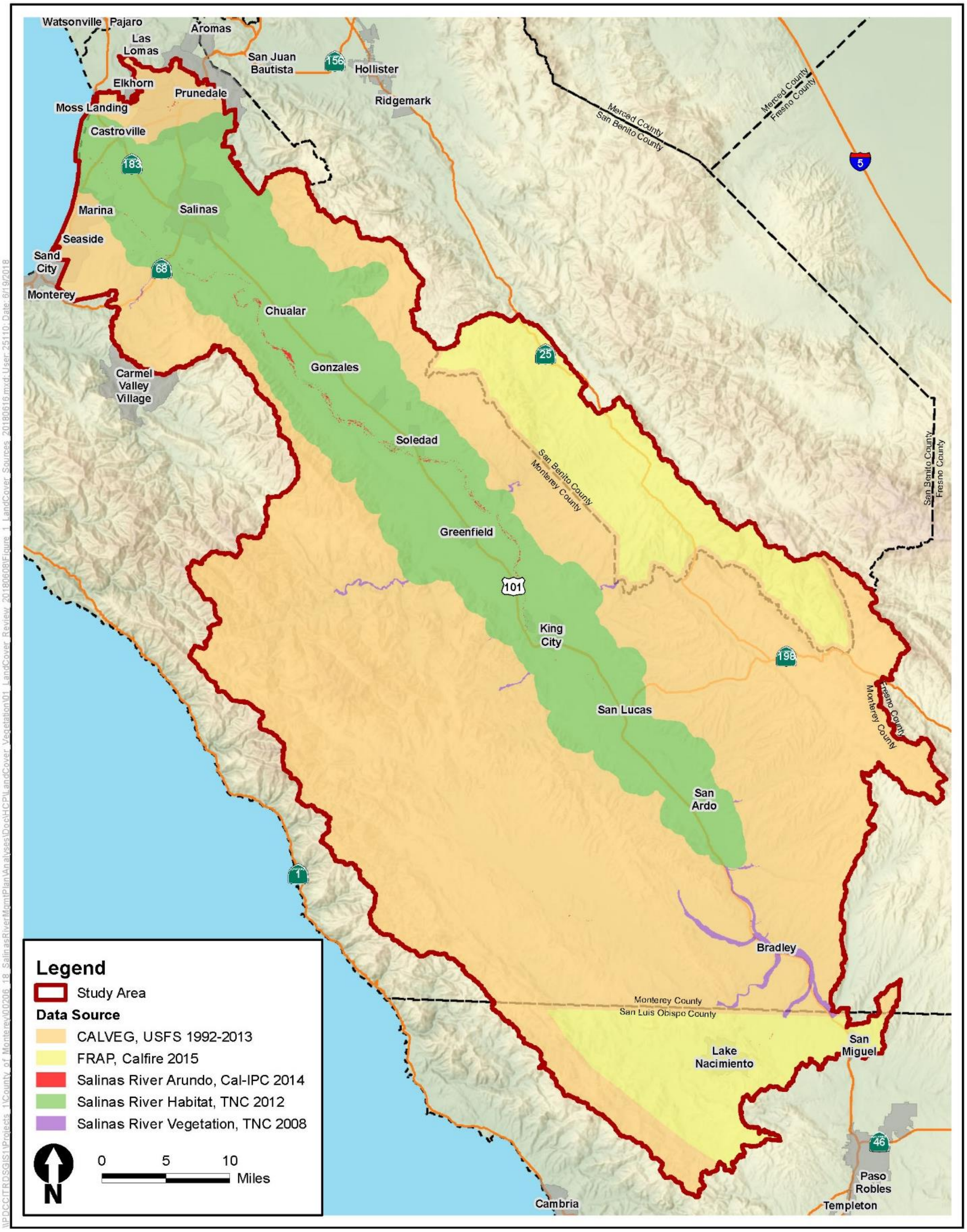

Figure D-1. Land Cover Data Sources

D.3 Methodology

The datasets selected were merged in order of the prioritization shown in Table D-2. Because the datasets use different land cover type naming conventions, the land cover classifications were compared and aligned prior to merging in order to create a standard land cover classification system that accurately portrays the existing communities in the LTMP study area. The U.S. National Vegetation Classification System (NVCS) (2017) was selected as the land cover classification system on which to base the LTMP land cover type names because it is used by the California State Wildlife Action Plan (SWAP). By using this classification system, management objectives consistent with the SWAP can be tracked over time. In addition, the NVCS is a well-recognized classification system, and several of the other datasets used herein have comparable classification systems.

Each land cover type within each dataset was assigned to a NVCS "macrogroup" type by comparing the original dataset land cover type, the geographic distribution, and other provided classification types (e.g., California Wildlife Habitat Relationships, CALVEG, etc.) with the description of the NVCS macrogroup land cover type. The selected macrogroup was then checked against Appendix D of the SWAP that lists those NVCS macrogroups that occur on the Central Coast. This process was complicated by the fact that the NVCS was modified in 2017, and this update combined some macrogroups and broke apart others.

The NVCS includes anthropogenic land cover types that were used to characterize agricultural land cover types where applicable. The NVCS does not include aquatic features (e.g., rivers, lakes), because these features are not vegetated. To characterize aquatic features within the study area, the National Wetlands Inventory (NWI) naming convention at the system level was used (e.g., riverine, estuarine) (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2018). Finally, there were several mapped land cover types that did not fit within the NVCS or NWI classifications, including urban and developed land cover types as well as several water feature types; these land cover types were assigned a land cover category unique to this dataset.

The final step to standardizing the land cover classification system is to assign each land cover type to a community. Land cover types were grouped or "rolled up" into communities based on similarities in vegetation type and structure, ecological function, and current land use. Table D-3 shows the names of NVCS, NWI, and LTMP-specific land cover types; their associated datasets; and the final "roll up" community names used in the LTMP.

Table D-3. Land Cover Classifications and “Roll Up” Communities for the LTMP Dataset

Land Cover Classification System and Land Cover Type	"Roll Up" Community	CALVEG	TNC 2008	TNC 2014	FRAP	Cal-IPC
U.S. National Vegetation Classification System—Macrogroup						
Californian Forest & Woodland	Forest and Woodland	x	x	x	x	
Southern Vancouverian Montane-Foothill Forest	Forest and Woodland	x				
Intermountain Singleleaf Pinyon-Juniper Woodland	Forest and Woodland	x			x	
Vancouverian Flooded & Swamp Forest	Riparian	x	x			
Interior Warm & Cool Desert Riparian Forest	Riparian	x	x	x	x	
Californian Chaparral	Shrublands	x	x	x	x	
Californian Coastal Scrub	Shrublands	x	x		x	
Californian Annual & Perennial Grassland	Grassland	x	x	x	x	
Pacific Coastal Beach & Dune	Coastal Strand and Dune	x				
Vancouverian Lowland Marsh, Wet Meadow & Shrubland	Wetland		x	x		
Western North American Montane-Subalpine-Boreal Marsh, Wet Meadow & Shrubland	Wetland	x				
Warm Desert Lowland Freshwater Marsh, Wet Meadow & Shrubland	Wetland	x	x	x	x	
North American Pacific Coastal Salt Marsh	Wetland	x			x	
Warm & Cool Desert Alkali-Saline Marsh, Playa & Shrubland	Shrublands	x				
North American Warm-Desert Xeric-Riparian Scrub	Riparian	x				
Cool Interior Chaparral	Shrublands	x				
Interior West Ruderal Flooded & Swamp Forest & Woodland	Riparian	x				
Western North American Ruderal Marsh, Wet Meadow & Shrubland	Wetland		x			
Western North American Ruderal Grassland & Shrubland	Shrublands	x				
North Pacific Coastal Ruderal Grassland & Shrubland	Coastal Strand and Dune	x				
Californian Ruderal Forest	Forest and Woodland	x	x	x	x	
Western North American Cliff, Scree & Rock Vegetation	Barren		x			

Land Cover Classification System and Land Cover Type	"Roll Up" Community	CALVEG	TNC 2008	TNC 2014	FRAP	Cal-IPC
National Vegetation Classification System—Agricultural and Developed Vegetation Cultural Type						
Woody Horticultural Crop	Agriculture	x	x	x	x	
Forest Plantation & Agroforestry	Agriculture	x				
Row & Close Grain Crop	Agriculture	x	x		x	
Pasture & Hay Field Crop	Agriculture				x	
Fallow Field & Weed Vegetation	Agriculture			x		
National Wetlands Inventory Systems						
Riverine	Riverine	x	x		x	
Lacustrine	Aquatic	x			x	
Estuarine	Estuarine	x			x	
Marine	Marine	x		x	x	
Other						
Barren	Barren	x		x	x	
Urban	Developed	x			x	
Artificial Lake or Pond	Aquatic	x				
Arundo donax	Riparian		x			x
Wash or floodplain	Riverine			x		
Urban/Developed	Developed			x	x	
Dairy and Other Bovine Confined Feeding Operations	Agriculture			x		
Water Feature	Aquatic		x	x		

Abbreviations: LTMP = Salinas River Long-Term Management Plan; Cal-IPC = California Invasive Plant Council; FRAP = Fire Resource and Assessment Program Vegetation; TNC = The Nature Conservancy

D.4 References

California Department of Forestry and Fire Protection. 2015. FRAP Vegetation. Available: http://frap.fire.ca.gov/data/statewide/fveg15_1.zip. Accessed: March 2016.

California Invasive Plant Council. 2014. Salinas Arundo [computer file]. Salinas, California: June 7, 2018.

The Nature Conservancy and Aerial Information Systems. 2008. Vegetation—Salinas River [ds615]. Available: ftp://ftp.dfg.ca.gov/BDB/GIS/BIOS/Public_Datasets/600_699/ds615.zip. Accessed: May 2018.

The Nature Conservancy, Aerial Information Systems, and Stanford University. 2014. Salinas Generalized Land Use/Land Cover Mapping [computer file]. Oakland, California: June 12, 2018.

U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service. 2017. Existing Vegetation Mid Region 5 Central Coast—CALVEG, Pacific Southwest Region. Available: https://data.fs.usda.gov/geodata/edw/edw_resources/fc/S_USA.EVMid_R05_CentralCoast.gdb.zip. Accessed: June 2018.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 2018. National Wetlands Inventory. Available: https://www.fws.gov/wetlands/Data/Data-Download.html. Accessed: June 2018.

U.S. National Vegetation Classification System. 2017. United States National Vegetation Classification Database. V2.01. Federal Geographic Data Committee, Vegetation Subcommittee, Washington DC. Available: http://usnvc.org/explore-classification. Accessed: January 15, 2019.

Appendix E
Special-Status Species Potential to Occur Tables

Table E-1. Special-Status Plant Species with Potential to Occur in the Management Area and/or Study Area

Common Name Scientific Name	Status[a] Federal/ State/CNPS	State Geographic Distribution	General Habitat Description	Potential to occur in Study Area[b]	Potential to occur in Management Area[b]
Abbott's bush-mallow *Malacothamnus abbottii*	–/–/1B.1	Monterey and San Luis Obispo Counties	Riparian scrub; among willows near rivers and along roadsides; 135–490 meters; blooms: May–October.	High	High
Alkali milk vetch *Astragalus tener* var. *tener*	–/–/1B.2	Southern Sacramento Valley, northern San Joaquin Valley, east San Francisco Bay Area	Playas, on adobe clay in valley and foothill grassland, vernal pools on alkaline soils; 1–60 meters; blooms March–June.	Moderate	Moderate
Arroyo Seco bush-mallow *Malacothamnus palmeri var. lucianus*	–/–/1B.2	Monterey County	Chaparral, cismontane woodland, meadows and seeps. Gravel banks and sandstone rocks on west-facing slopes in full sun. 10–1160 meters; blooms: April–August.	High	Moderate
Bristlecone fir *Abies bracteata*	–/–/1B.3	Monterey and San Luis Obispo Counties	Perennial evergreen tree. Rocky; broadleafed upland forest, chaparral; lower montane coniferous forest; 210–1600 meters.	High	Low
Butterworth's buckwheat *Eriogonum butterworthianum*	–/–/1B.3	Monterey County	Chaparral, valley and foothill grassland. Dry sandstone outcrops and crevices; 335–715 meters; booms: June–July.	High	Moderate
California jewelflower *Caulanthus californicus*	FE/SE/1B.1	Fresno, San Luis Obispo, Kings, Tulare, Kern, Ventura, and Santa Barbara Counties	Chenopod scrub, pinyon and juniper woodland, valley and foothill grassland; 61–1000 meters; blooms February–May.	Moderate	Moderate
Caper-fruited tropidocarpum *Tropidocarpum capparideum*	–/–/1B.1	Historically known from the northwest San Joaquin Valley and adjacent Coast Range foothills; currently known from Fresno, Monterey, and San Luis Obispo Counties	Grasslands on alkaline hills; below 455 meters; blooms March–April.	High	Moderate
Carmel Valley bush-mallow *Malacothamnus palmeri var. involucratus*	–/–/1B.2	Monterey and San Luis Obispo Counties	Chaparral, cismontane woodland, coastal scrub. Talus hilltops and slopes, sometimes on serpentine soil; burn dependent; 30–1100 meters; blooms May–October.	High	Moderate

Common Name Scientific Name	Status[a] Federal/ State/CNPS	State Geographic Distribution	General Habitat Description	Potential to occur in Study Area[b]	Potential to occur in Management Area[b]
Carmel Valley malacothrix *Malacothrix saxatilis var. arachnoide*	–/–/1B.2	Central coastal California including Monterey, San Luis Obispo, San Benito, and Santa Barbara Counties	Chaparral, coastal scrub. Rock outcrops or steep rocky roadcuts; 30–1040 meters; blooms March-December.	High	Moderate
Chaparral ragwort *Senecio aphanactis*	–/–/2B.2	Scattered locations in central western and southwestern California, from Alameda County to San Diego County	Oak woodland, coastal scrub, chaparral, open sandy or rocky areas, on alkaline soils; 15–800 meters; blooms January–April.	High	Moderate
Choris' popcorn-flower *Plagiobothrys chorisianus* var. *chorisianus*	–/–/1B.2	Southwest San Francisco Bay Area, northern Central Coast: Santa Cruz, San Francisco and San Mateo Counties	Mesic sites in chaparral, coastal prairie, coastal scrub; 15–160 meters; blooms March–June.	High	High
Chorro Creek bog thistle *Cirsium fontinale var. obispo*	FE/SE/1B.2	San Luis Obispo County	Serpentine seeps and drainages in chaparral, cismontane woodland, coastal scrub, and valley and foothill grassland; 35–385 meters; blooms: February–September.	High	Low
Clover lupine *Lupinus tidestromii*	FE/SE/1B.1	Monterey, Marin, and Sonoma Counties	Coastal dunes; 0–100 meters; blooms: April–June.	High	Low
Cone Peak bedstraw *Galium californicum ssp. luciense*	–/–/1B.3	Monterey and San Luis Obispo Counties	Broadleafed upland forest, lower montane coniferous forest, cismontane woodland, chaparral. In forest duff or gravelly talus of pine and oak forest, in partial shade; 400–1525 meters; blooms March–September.	High	Low
Congdon's tarplant *Centromadia parryi* ssp. *congdonii*	–/–/1B.1	East San Francisco Bay Area, Salinas Valley, Los Osos Valley	Alkaline soils in annual grassland, on lower slopes, flats, and swales, sometimes on saline soils; below 230 meters; blooms May–October (November).	High	Moderate

Common Name Scientific Name	Status[a] Federal/ State/CNPS	State Geographic Distribution	General Habitat Description	Potential to occur in Study Area[b]	Potential to occur in Management Area[b]
Contra Costa goldfields *Lasthenia conjugens*	FE/–/1B.1	Scattered occurrences in Coast Range valleys and southwest edge of Sacramento Valley, Alameda, Contra Costa, Mendocino, Monterey, Marin, Napa, Santa Barbara, Santa Clara, Solano and Sonoma Counties	Wet areas in cismontane woodland, valley and foothill grassland, vernal pools, alkaline playas or saline vernal pools and swales; below 470 meters; blooms March–June.	High	High
Cook's triteleia *Triteleia ixioides ssp. cookii*	–/–/1B.3	Monterey and San Luis Obispo Counties	Cismontane woodland, closed-cone coniferous forest along streamsides, wet ravines; on serpentine and in serpentine seeps. Sometimes near cypresses; 120–735 meters; blooms May–June.	High	Moderate
Davidson's bush-mallow *Malacothamnus davidsonii*	–/–/1B.2	Coastal California ranging from the Bay Area to southern California	Chaparral, cismontane woodland, coastal scrub and riparian woodland, sandy washes; 185–855 meters; blooms June–January.	High	High
Diablo Range hare-leaf *Lagophylla diabolensis*	–/–/1B.2	Monterey, San Benito, Fresno Counties	Cismontane woodland, valley and foothill grassland on clay soils; 365–1070 meters; blooms April–September	High	Moderate
Dwarf calycadenia *Calycadenia villosa*	–/–/1B.1	Fresno, Santa Barbara, San Luis Obispo Counties	Chaparral, cismontane woodland, meadows and seeps, valley and foothill grassland; often in rocky, fine soils, open dry meadows and gravelly outwashes; 215–1275 meters; blooms May–October.	High	High
Eastwood's goldenbush *Ericameria fasciculata*	–/–/1B.1	Monterey County	Closed-cone coniferous forest, chaparral (maritime), coastal dunes and coastal scrub; in sandy openings; 30–275 meters; blooms July–October.	High	High
Fort Ord spineflower *Chorizanthe minutiflora*	–/–/1B.2	Northern Monterey County	Coastal scrub and chaparral (maritime) in sandy openings; 60–145 meters.	High	High

Common Name Scientific Name	Status[a] Federal/ State/CNPS	State Geographic Distribution	General Habitat Description	Potential to occur in Study Area[b]	Potential to occur in Management Area[b]
Fragrant fritillary *Fritillaria liliacea*	–/–/1B.2	Coast Ranges from Marin County to San Benito County	Adobe soils of interior foothills, coastal prairie, coastal scrub, valley and foothill grassland, often on serpentinite; 3–410 meters; blooms February–April.	High	High
Gabilan Mountains manzanita *Arctostaphylos gabilanensis*	–/–/1B.2	Gabilan Mountains region	Chaparral and cismontane woodland on granitic substrates; 425–670 meters; blooms January.	High	Low
Hall's tarplant *Deinandra halliana*	–/–/1B.1	Fresno, Monterey, San Benito, San Luis Obispo Counties	Cismontane woodland, chenopod scrub, valley and foothill grassland. Reported from a variety of substrates including clay, sand, and alkaline soils; 155–910 meters; blooms March–May.	High	Moderate
Hardham's bedstraw *Galium hardhamiae*	–/–/1B.3	Monterey and San Luis Obispo Counties	Closed-cone coniferous forest, chaparral on serpentine with *Cupressus sargentii*; 300–930 meters; blooms April–October.	High	Low
Hardham's evening-primrose *Camissoniopsis hardhamiae*	–/–/1B.2	Monterey and San Luis Obispo Counties	Chaparral and cismontane woodland on sandy or decomposed carbonate; 140–945 meters; blooms March–May.	High	High
Hernandez spineflower *Chorizanthe biloba var. immemora*	–/–/1B.2	Monterey and San Benito County	Chaparral, cismontane woodland, usually on serpentinite, sometimes clay soils; 425–1115 meters; blooms May–September.	High	Low
Hickman's checkerbloom *Sidalcea hickmanii ssp. hickmanii*	–/–/1B.3	Monterey County	Chaparral; grassy openings in chaparral and on dry ridges; 330–1640 meters; blooms May–July.	High	Moderate
Hickman's onion *Allium hickmanii*	–/–/1B.2	Monterey and San Luis Obispo Counties	Closed-cone coniferous forest, chaparral (maritime), coastal prairie and scrub, valley and foothill grassland. Sandy loam, damp ground and vernal swales; mostly in grassland though can be associated with chaparral or woodland; 20–200 meters; blooms March–May.	High	High

Common Name Scientific Name	Status[a] Federal/ State/CNPS	State Geographic Distribution	General Habitat Description	Potential to occur in Study Area[b]	Potential to occur in Management Area[b]
Hooked popcornflower *Plagiobothrys uncinatus*	–/–/1B.2	California central coast	Chaparral (sandy), cismontane woodland, valley and foothill grassland, coastal bluff scrub; and stone outcrops and canyon sides; often in burned or disturbed areas; 300–820 meters; blooms April–May.	High	High
Hooker's manzanita *Arctostaphylos hookeri ssp. hookeri*	–/–/1B.2	Monterey and Santa Cruz Counties	Closed-cone coniferous forest, chaparral, cismontane woodland, coastal scrub; in sandy soils, sandy shales, sandstone outcrops; 85–536 meters; blooms January–June.	High	High
Hospital canyon larkspur *Delphinium californicum* ssp. *interius*	–/–/1B.2	Inner South Coast Ranges, eastern San Francisco Bay: Alameda, Contra Costa, Merced, San Benito, Santa Clara, San Joaquin, San Luis Obispo, and Stanislaus Counties	Openings in chaparral, mesic cismontane woodland, on moist slopes and ravines; 195–1095 meters; blooms April–June.	High	Moderate
Hutchinson's larkspur *Delphinium hutchinsoniae*	–/–/1B.2	Monterey County	Broadleafed upland forest, chaparral, coastal prairie and scrub; on semi-shaded, slightly moist slopes, usually west-facing; 0–427 meters; blooms March–June.	High	Moderate
Indian Valley bush-mallow *Malacothamnus aboriginum*	–/–/1B.2	Fresno, Kings, Monterey, San Benito, Santa Clara, San Mateo Counties	Cismontane woodland, chaparral; granitic outcrops and sandy bare soil, often in disturbed soils; 150–1700 meters; blooms April–October.	High	Moderate
Indian Valley spineflower *Aristocapsa insignis*	–/–/1B.2	Monterey and San Luis Obispo Counties	Cismontane woodland on sandy substrates; 180–1070 meters; blooms May–September.	High	Moderate
Jolon clarkia *Clarkia jolonensis*	–/–/1B.2	Endemic to Santa Lucia Mountains in Monterey County	Cismontane woodland; edges and recently burned stands of chaparral, coastal scrub, or oak woodland; 20–660 meters; blooms April–June.	High	Moderate

Common Name Scientific Name	Status[a] Federal/ State/CNPS	State Geographic Distribution	General Habitat Description	Potential to occur in Study Area[b]	Potential to occur in Management Area[b]
Kellman's bristle moss *Orthotrichum kellmanii*	–/–/1B.2	Monterey, Santa Cruz, and San Mateo Counties	Chaparral, cismontane woodland. Sandstone outcrops with high calcium concentrations from eroded boulders out of non-calcareous sandstone bedrock. Rock outcrops in small openings within dense chaparral with overstory of scattered *Pinus attenuate*; 343–685 meters; blooms January–February.	High	Moderate
Kellogg's horkelia *Horkelis cuneata var. sericea*	–/–/1B.1	California central coast and Bay Area	Closed-cone coniferous forest, chaparral (maritime), coastal dunes and scrub; in sandy or gravelly openings; Elevation: 10–200 meters; blooms April–September.	High	High
Koch's cord moss *Entosthodon kochii*	–/–/1B.3	Mendocino, Mariposa, Marin, San Luis Obispo Counties	Cismontane woodland in moss growing on soil on river banks; 185–365 meters.	High	High
La Panza mariposa lily *Calochortus simulans*	–/–/1B.3	Santa Barbara and San Luis Obispo Counties	Valley and foothill grassland, cismontane woodland, chaparral, lower montane coniferous forest on decomposed granite, or sometimes on serpentine; 150–1160 meters; blooms April–June.	High	High
Late-flowered mariposa-lily *Calochortus fimbriatus*	–/–/1B.3	From Monterey south to Los Angeles County	Chaparral, cismontane woodland, riparian woodland on serpentine; 270–1645 meters; blooms June–August.	High	High
Legenere *Legenere limosa*	–/–/1B.1	Primarily in the lower Sacramento Valley, also from north Coast Ranges, northern San Joaquin Valley and the Santa Cruz Mountains	Deep, seasonally wet habitats such as vernal pools, ditches, marsh edges, and river banks; below 880 meters; blooms April–June.	High	High
Marsh microseris *Microseris paludosa*	–/–/1B.2	From Point Arena in Mendocino County south to San Luis Obispo County	Closed-cone coniferous forest, cismontane woodland, coastal scrub, valley and foothill grassland; 3–610 meters; blooms April–July.	High	High
Marsh sandwort *Arenaria paludicola*	FE/SE/1B.1	Central and south coasts	Sandy openings in brackish or freshwater marshes and swamps; 3–170 meters; blooms May–August.	High	Moderate

Common Name Scientific Name	Status[a] Federal/ State/CNPS	State Geographic Distribution	General Habitat Description	Potential to occur in Study Area[b]	Potential to occur in Management Area[b]
Mason's neststraw *Stylocline massonii*	–/–/1B.1	Monterey, San Luis Obispo, Kern, and Los Angeles Counties	Chenopod scrub, pinyon and juniper woodland. Sandy washes; 100–1200 meters; blooms March–May.	High	Moderate
Menzies' wallflower *rysimum menziesii ssp. menziesii*	FE/SE/1B.1	Humboldt, Mendocino, and Monterey Counties	Coastal dunes; localized on dunes and coastal strand, close to high tide line and protected from wave action, as well as in bluff scrub and on open, sparsely vegetated dunes. Substrate is loose sand lacking in organic matter and minerals. Blooms March.	High	High
Monterey spineflower *Chorizanthe pungens var. pungens*	FT/–/1B.2	Monterey, San Luis Obispo, and Santa Cruz Counties	Coastal dunes, chaparral, cismontane woodland, coastal scrub; sandy soils in coastal dunes or more inland within chaparral or other habitats; 3–450 meters; blooms April–August.	High	High
Most beautiful jewelflower *Streptanthus albidus* ssp. *peramoenus*	–/–/1B.2	Eastern San Francisco Bay area, central outer South Coast Ranges in Alameda, Contra Costa, Monterey, Santa Barbara, Santa Clara, San Luis Obispo, and Stanislaus Counties	On serpentinite outcrops in chaparral, cismontane woodland, valley and foothill grassland, on ridges and slopes; 95–1000 meters; blooms (March) April–September (October).	High	Low
Northern curly-leaved monardella *Monardella sinuata ssp. nigrescens*	–/–/1B.2	Monterey, Marin, San Francisco, and Santa Cruz Counties	Coastal dunes, coastal scrub, chaparral, lower montane coniferous forest. Sandy soils; 10–245 meters; blooms April–September	High	High
Ojai fritillary *Fritillaria ojaiensis*	–/–/1B.2	Monterey, Santa Barbara San Luis Obispo, and Ventura Counties	Broadleafed upland forest (mesic), chaparral, lower montane coniferous forest, cismontane woodland. Usually on loamy soil. Sometimes on serpentine; sometimes along roadsides; 100–1140 meters; blooms February–May	High	Low

Common Name Scientific Name	Status[a] Federal/ State/CNPS	State Geographic Distribution	General Habitat Description	Potential to occur in Study Area[b]	Potential to occur in Management Area[b]
Oregon meconella *Meconella oregana*	–/–/1B.1	Contra Costa, Monterey, San Luis Obispo, and Santa Clara Counties	Coastal prairie, coastal scrub in open, moist places; 60–640 meters; blooms March–April.	High	High
Oval-leaved snapdragon *Antirrhinum ovatum*	–/–/4.2	Central coast from Monterey to Ventura Counties	Chaparral, cismontane woodland, pinyon and juniper woodland, valley and foothill grassland. From open hillsides to small vernal pools in clay or gypsum soils w/in grassland or woodland. Sites often alkaline; 200–1000 meters; blooms May–November.	High	Moderate
Pajaro manzanita *Arctostaphylos pajaroensis*	–/–/1B.1	Monterey, San Benito, Santa Cruz Counties	Chaparral in sandy soil; 30–760 meters; blooms December–March.	High	High
Pale-yellow layia *Layia heterotricha*	–/–/1B.1	Central and south coast from Monterey to Los Angeles Counties	Pinyon-juniper woodland, valley and foothill grassland; coastal scrub, cismontane woodland; many historical, extirpated occurrences; alkaline or clay soils in open areas. Seriously endangered in California; 270–1365 meters; blooms March–June.	High	Moderate
Palmate-bracted bird's-beak *Chloropyron palmatum*	FE/SE/1B.1	Livermore Valley and scattered locations in the Central Valley from Colusa County to Fresno County	Alkaline sites in grassland and chenopod scrub; 5–155 meters; blooms May–October.	Low	Low
Palmer's monardella *Monardella palmeri*	–/–/1B.2	Monterey and San Luis Obispo Counties	Cismontane woodland, chaparral on serpentine, often found associated with Sargent cypress forests; 90–945 meters; blooms June-August.	High	Low
Pine rose *Rosa pinetorum*	–/–/1B.2	Monterey and Santa Cruz Counties	Closed-cone coniferous forest, cismontane woodland; 5–1090 meters; blooms May–July.	High	High
Pink johnny-nip *Castilleja ambigua ssp. insalutata*	–/–/1B.1	Monterey and San Luis Obispo Counties	Coastal prairie and coastal bluff scrub; 0–100 meters; blooms May–August.	High	High

Common Name Scientific Name	Status[a] Federal/ State/CNPS	State Geographic Distribution	General Habitat Description	Potential to occur in Study Area[b]	Potential to occur in Management Area[b]
Pinnacles buckwheat *Eriogonum nortonii*	–/–/1B.3	Monterey and San Benito Counties	Chaparral and valley and foothill grassland; often on recent burns and sandy soil; 300–975 meters; blooms May–September.	High	Moderate
Point Reyes horkelia *Horkelia marinensis*	–/–/1B.2	North and Central Coast from Monterey to Mendocino County.	Coastal dunes, coastal prairie, coastal scrub; 5–755 meters; blooms May–September.	High	High
Prostrate vernal pool navarretia *Navarretia prostrata*	–/–/1B.1	Western San Joaquin Valley, interior South Coast Ranges, central South Coast, Peninsular Ranges: Alameda, Los Angeles, Merced, Monterey, Orange, Riverside, San Bernardino, San Diego, and San Luis Obispo Counties	Vernal pools and mesic areas in coastal scrub and alkali grasslands; 15–1210 meters; blooms April–July.	High	High
Rayless layia *Layia discoidea*	–/–/1B.1	Fresno and San Benito Counties	Chaparral, cismontane woodland, lower montane coniferous forest on serpentine alluvium and serpentine talus; 790–1585 meters; blooms May.	High	Low
Recurved larkspur *Delphinium recurvatum*	–/–/1B.2	Central Valley from Colusa to Kern Counties	Alkaline soils in valley and foothill grassland, saltbush scrub, cismontane woodland; 3–790 meters; blooms March–June.	High	High
Robbins' nemacladus *Nemacladus secundiflorus var. robbinsii*	–/–/1B.2	Coastal central and southern California	Chaparral, valley and foothill grassland on dry, sandy or gravelly slopes; 350–1700 meters; blooms April–June.	High	Moderate
Saline clover *Trifolium hydrophilum*	–/–/1B.2	Sacramento Valley, central western California	Salt marsh, mesic alkaline areas in valley and foothill grasslands, vernal pools, marshes and swamps; below 300 meters; blooms April–June.	High	High
Salt marsh bird's beak *Cordylanthus maritimus ssp. maritimus*	FE/SE/1B.2	Central and south coasts	Coastal dunes and coastal salt marshes and swamps; 0–30 meters; blooms May–November.	Low	Low

Common Name Scientific Name	Status[a] Federal/ State/CNPS	State Geographic Distribution	General Habitat Description	Potential to occur in Study Area[b]	Potential to occur in Management Area[b]
San Antonio collinsia *Collinsia antonina*	–/–/1B.2	Monterey County	Chaparral, cismontane woodland on shale substrates; 280–365 meters; blooms March–May.	High	Moderate
San Benito evening-primrose *Camissonia benitensis*	FT/–/1B.1	Fresno, Monterey and San Benito Counties	Chaparral, cismontane woodland, valley and foothill grassland on gravelly serpentine alluvial terraces; 485–1435 meters; blooms April–June.	High	Low
San Benito fritillary *Fritillaria viridea*	–/–/1B.2	Fresno, Monterey and San Benito, San Luis Obispo Counties	Chaparral, cismontane woodland on serpentine slopes. Sometimes on rocky streambanks; 365–1360 meters; blooms March–May.	High	Low
San Benito onion *Allium howellii var. sanbenitense*	–/–/1B.3	San Benito, Fresno, and Monterey Counties	Chaparral, valley and foothill grassland in openings on clay, often on steep slopes; 390–1270 meters.	High	Moderate
San Benito pentachaeta *Pentachaeta exilis ssp. aeolica*	–/–/1B.2	Central coastal California	Cismontane woodland, valley and foothill grassland; 365–855 meters; blooms March–May.	High	Moderate
San Francisco collinsia *Collinsia multicolor*	–/–/1B.2	Coastal California from San Francisco to Monterey County	Closed-cone coniferous forest, coastal scrub; 30–250 meters; blooms March–May.	High	Moderate
San Joaquin spearscale *Extriplex joaquinana*	–/–/1B.2	West edge of Central Valley from Glenn County to Tulare County	Alkaline soils in chenopod scrub, meadows and seeps, playas, valley and foothill grassland; 1–835 meters; blooms April–October.	High	Moderate
San Luis Obispo owl's-clover *Castilleja densiflora var. obispoensis*	–/–/1B.2	San Luis Obispo County	Valley and foothill grassland, meadows and seeps, sometimes on serpentine; 10–485 meters; blooms March–May.	High	Moderate
San Luis Obispo sedge *Carex obispoensis*	–/–/1B.2	Coastal central and southern California in Monterey, San Luis Obispo, and San Diego Counties	Closed-cone coniferous forest, chaparral, coastal prairie, coastal scrub, valley and foothill grassland, usually in transition zone on sand, clay, serpentine, or gabbro soils in seeps; 5–845 meters; blooms April–June.	High	Moderate

Common Name Scientific Name	Status[a] Federal/ State/CNPS	State Geographic Distribution	General Habitat Description	Potential to occur in Study Area[b]	Potential to occur in Management Area[b]
San Simeon baccharis *Baccharis plummerae ssp. glabrata*	–/–/1B.2	Central coastal California in Monterey and San Luis Obispo Counties	Coastal scrub in open shrub-grassland associations; 25–485 meters; blooms June.	High	Moderate
Sand gilia (= Monterey gilia) *Gilia tenuiflora ssp. arenaria*	FE/ST/1B.2	Monterey and Santa Cruz Counties	Coastal dunes, coastal scrub, chaparral (maritime), cismontane woodland; bare, wind-sheltered areas often near dune summit or in the hind dunes; two records from Pleistocene inland dunes; 0–245 meters.	High	High
Sand-loving wallflower *Erysimum ammophilum*	–/–/1B.2	Coastal California ranging from the Bay Area south to San Diego County	Chaparral (maritime), coastal dunes and scrub; on sandy openings; 0–130 meters; blooms February–June.	High	High
Sandmat manzanita *Arctostaphylos pumila*	–/–/1B.2	Monterey County	Closed-cone coniferous forest, chaparral (maritime), cismontane woodland, coastal dunes and scrub on sandy soil with other chaparral associates; 3–205 meters; blooms February–May.	High	High
Santa Cruz clover *Trifolium buckwestiorum*	–/–/1B.1	Monterey. Marin, Santa Cruz, San Francisco, San Mateo Counties	Broadleafed upland forest, cismontane woodland, coastal prairie; along gravelly margins and moist grassland; 60–545 meters; blooms April–October.	High	High
Santa Cruz microseris *Stebbinsoseris decipiens*	–/–/1B	Bay Area and Central Coast	Broadleafed upland forest, closed cone coniferous forest, chaparral, coastal prairie, coastal scrub; open areas in loose or disturbed soil, usually derived from sandstone, shale or serpentine; on seaward slopes; 10–500 meters; blooms April–May.	High	High

Common Name Scientific Name	Status[a] Federal/ State/CNPS	State Geographic Distribution	General Habitat Description	Potential to occur in Study Area[b]	Potential to occur in Management Area[b]
Santa Cruz Mountains pussypaws *Calyptridium parryi* var. *hesseae*	–/–/1B.1	Southern San Francisco Bay, Mount Hamilton, Santa Cruz Mountains, northern inner South Coast Ranges, Monterey, San Benito, Santa Clara, San Luis Obispo, Stanislaus, and Santa Cruz Counties	Sandy or gravelly, openings in chaparral, cismontane woodland; 305–1530 meters; blooms May–August.	High	Moderate
Santa Cruz tarplant *Holocarpha macradeni*	FT/SE/1B.1	San Francisco Bay and Monterey Bay regions	Coastal prairie, coastal scrub, and valley and foothill grassland often on clay and sandy substrates.	High	Low
Santa Lucia bedstraw *Galium clementis*	–/–/1B.3	Monterey County	Lower montane coniferous forest, upper montane coniferous forest. Forms soft mats in shady rocky patches on granite or serpentine, mostly on exposed peaks; 975–1645 meters; blooms April–July.	High	Low
Santa Lucia bush-mallow *Malacothamnus palmeri var. palmeri*	–/–/1B.2	Monterey and San Luis Obispo Counties	Chaparral on dry rocky slopes, mostly near summits, but occasionally extending down canyons to the sea; 3–670 meters; blooms May–July.	High	Low
Santa Lucia dwarf rush *Juncus luciensis*	–/–/1B.2	Central and southern coasts	Vernal pools, wet meadows and seeps, ephemeral drainages, streamsides in lower montane coniferous forest, chaparral, and Great Basin scrub; 300–2040 meters; blooms April–July.	High	Moderate
Santa Lucia manzanita *Arctostaphylos Luciana*	–/–/1B.2	San Luis Obispo County	Chaparral and cismontane woodland on shale (one site says serpentine) outcrops, on slopes; 105–825 meters; blooms December–March.	High	Moderate
Santa Lucia mint *Pogogyne clareana*	–/SE/1B.2	Monterey County	Chaparral, cismontane woodland, and riparian woodland in intermittent streams and in moist sandy soil; 325–505 meters; blooms: April–July.	High	Moderate

Common Name Scientific Name	Status[a] Federal/ State/CNPS	State Geographic Distribution	General Habitat Description	Potential to occur in Study Area[b]	Potential to occur in Management Area[b]
Santa Lucia monkeyflower *Erythranthe hardhamiae*	–/–/1B.1	Monterey and San Luis Obispo Counties	Chaparral on sandy soils in openings, sand-filled crevices of sandstone outcrops, and sometimes on serpentinite; 300–705 meters; blooms March–May.	High	Low
Santa Lucia purple amole *Chlorogalum purpureum var. purpureum*	FT/–/1B.1	Monterey and San Luis Obispo Counties	Chaparral, cismontane woodland, valley and foothill grassland often in grassy areas with blue oaks in foothill woodland on gravelly clay soils; 240–390 meters; blooms April–June.	High	High
Seaside bird's-beak *Cordylanthus rigidus ssp. littoralis*	–/SE/1B	Monterey and San Luis Obispo Counties	Closed-cone coniferous forest, chaparral (maritime), cismontane woodland, coastal dunes and scrub on sandy, often disturbed sites; 0–215 meters; blooms April–October.	High	High
Shining navarretia *Navarretia nigelliformis* ssp. *radians*	–/–/1B.2	Interior foothills of South Coast Ranges from Merced County to San Luis Obispo County	Mesic areas with heavy clay soils, in swales and clay flats, in oak woodland, grassland; 76–1000 meters; blooms April–July.	High	Moderate
small-flowered calycadenia *Calycadenia micrantha*	–/–/1B.2	Colusa, Humboldt, Lake, Monterey, Napa, and Trinity Counties	Chaparral, valley and foothill grassland, meadows and seeps on rocky talus or scree in sparsely vegetated areas, occasionally on roadsides, sometimes on serpentine; 435–1405 meters; blooms June–September.	High	Moderate
Spreading navarretia *Navarretia fossalis*	FT/–/1B.1	Central and south coasts	Chenopod scrub, freshwater marshes and swamps, playas and vernal pools; 30–655 meters; blooms April–June.	High	Low
Straight-awned spineflower *Chorizanthe rectispina*	–/–/1B.3	Monterey, San Luis Obispo, Santa Barbara Counties	Chaparral, cismontane woodland, coastal scrub, often in granite in chaparral; 355–1035 meters; blooms April–July.	High	Low
Toro manzanita *Arctostaphylos montereyensis*	–/–/1B.2	Monterey County	Chaparral (maritime), cismontane woodland, coastal scrub, often in sandy soil; 30–730 meters; blooms February–March.	High	High

Common Name *Scientific Name*	**Status[a] Federal/ State/CNPS**	**State Geographic Distribution**	**General Habitat Description**	**Potential to occur in Study Area[b]**	**Potential to occur in Management Area[b]**
Umbrella larkspur *Delphinium umbraculorum*	–/–/1B.3	Central coast from Monterey to Ventura County	Cismontane woodland; mesic sites; 400–1600 meters; blooms April–June.	High	Moderate
Vernal pool bent grass *Agrostis lacuna-vernalis*	–/–/1B.1	Monterey County	Vernal pools; in mima mounds areas or on the margins of vernal pools; 115–145 meters; blooms April–May.	High	High
Western Heermann's buckwheat *Eriogonum heermannii var. occidentale*	–/–/1B.2	Fresno, Monterey, and San Benito Counties	Cismontane woodland openings, often on serpentine alluvium or on roadsides, rarely on clay or shale slopes; 410–805 meters; blooms July–October.	High	Low
woven-spored lichen *Texosporium sancti-jacobi*	–/–/3	Central and south coast from San Benito to San Diego	Chaparral in open sites. Found in California with *Adenostoma fas., Eriogonum, Selaginella*. Found at Pinnacles National Monument on small mammal pellets; 290–660 meters.	High	Moderate
Yadon's rein orchid *Piperia yadonii*	FE/–/1B.1	Monterey County	Closed-cone coniferous forest, chaparral, coastal bluff scrub; on sandstone and sandy soil, but poorly drained and often dry. Seriously endangered; 10–415 meters; blooms February–August.	High	High
yellow-flowered eriastrum *Eriastrum luteum*	–/–/1B.2	Monterey and San Luis Obispo Counties	Broadleafed upland forest, chaparral, cismontane woodland on bare sandy soil and decomposed granite slopes; 360–1000 meters; blooms May–June.	High	Moderate

Common Name Scientific Name	Status[a] Federal/ State/CNPS	State Geographic Distribution	General Habitat Description	Potential to occur in Study Area[b]	Potential to occur in Management Area[b]

[a] Status explanations:

Federal

FE = listed as endangered under the federal Endangered Species Act.

FT = listed as threatened under the federal Endangered Species Act.

– = no listing.

State

SE = listed as endangered under the California Endangered Species Act.

ST = listed as threatened under the California Endangered Species Act.

R = listed as rare under the California Native Plant Protection Act. This category is no longer used for newly listed plants, but some plants previously listed as rare retain this designation.

– = no listing.

California Rare Plant Rank

1A = List 1A species: presumed extinct in California.

1B = List 1B species: rare, threatened, or endangered in California and elsewhere.

2 = List 2 species: rare, threatened, or endangered in California but more common elsewhere.

3 = List 3 species: plants about which more information is needed to determine their status.

4 = List 4 species: limited distribution; species on a watch list.

- .1 = Seriously endangered in California (over 80% of occurrences threatened—high degree and immediacy of threat).
- .2 = Fairly endangered in California (20-80% occurrences threatened).
- .3 = Not very threatened in California (less than 20% of occurrences threatened / low degree and immediacy of threat or no current threats known).

– = no listing.

[b] Potential for Occurrence

Low: The area is within the species range, and suitable habitat for the species may or may not occur in the area, but species was not recorded in the area.

Moderate: The area is within the species range, and suitable habitat for the species is present in the area, but records for the species in the area are only historic, uncertain, or not recorded in the CNDDB (CRPR 4 species).

High: The area is within the species range and suitable habitat for the species is present in the area, and there are one or more recent records of the species in the area.

Table E-2. Special-Status Wildlife with the Potential to Occur in the Management Area and/or Study Area

Common Name *Scientific Name*	**Status[a] Federal/ State/ Other**	**State Geographic Range**	**General Habitat Description**	**Potential to occur in Study Area[b]**	**Potential to occur in Management Area[b]**
Invertebrates					
Arroyo Seco short-tailed whipscorpion *Hubbardia secoensis*	–/–/–	Known only from the type locality, Arroyo Seco, Monterey County.	Most species occur in leaf litter and beneath rocks.	High	Moderate
Bay checkerspot butterfly *Euphydryas editha bayensis*	FT/–/–	Restricted to native grasslands on outcrops of serpentine soil in the vicinity of San Francisco Bay.	Coastal dunes, ultramafic, valley and foothill grassland. *Plantago erecta* is the primary host plant; *Orthocarpus densiflorus* and *O. purpurscens* are the secondary host plants.	Moderate	Low
Globose dune beetle *Coelus globosus*	–/–/–	Erratically distributed from Ten Mile Creek in Mendocino County.	Inhabitant of coastal sand dune habitat. Burrows beneath the sand surface, commonly beneath dune vegetation.	High	High
Kern primrose sphinx moth *Euproserpinus euterpe*	FT/–/–	Occurs on the Carrizo Plain National Monument in San Luis Obispo County, in the Cuyama Valley of Santa Barbara and Ventura counties, and the Walker Basin of Kern County.	Valley foothill, oak woodland, and chaparral associated with evening primrose.	Low	Low
Mimic tryonia (California brackishwater snail) *Tryonia imitator*	–/–/–	From Sonoma County south to San Diego County.	Inhabits coastal lagoons, estuaries and salt marshes. Found only in permanently submerged areas in a variety of sediment types; able to withstand a wide range of salinities.	High	High
Monarch butterfly (California overwintering population) *Danaus plexippus*	–/–/–	Winter roost sites extend along the coast from northern Mendocino to southern San Diego County.	Roosts located in wind-protected tree groves (eucalyptus, Monterey pine, cypress), with nectar and water sources nearby.	High	High
Monterey socalchemmis spider *Socalchemmis monterey*	–/–/–	Known from only two localities in Monterey County: Arroyo Seco (type locality) and Cone Peak Trail.	Chaparral habitat.	High	High

Common Name ***Scientific Name***	**Status[a] Federal/ State/ Other**	**State Geographic Range**	**General Habitat Description**	**Potential to occur in Study Area[b]**	**Potential to occur in Management Area[b]**
Obscure bumble bee *Bombus caliginosus*	–/–/–	Coastal areas from Santa Barbara county to Oregon border.	Food plant genera include *Baccharis, Cirsium, Lupinus, Lotus, Grindelia,* and *Phacelia*.	High	Moderate
Pinnacles optioservus riffle beetle *Optioservus canus*	–/–/–	Endemic to Pinnacles and surrounding region in San Benito County.	Aquatic; found on rocks and in gravel of riffles in cool, swift, clear streams.	High	Moderate
Pinnacles shieldback katydid *Idiostatus kathleenae*	–/–/–	Known only from Pinnacles National Monument in San Benito County.	Not available	High	Moderate
Redwood shoulderband *Helminthoglypta sequoicola consors*	–/–/–	Known only from south slope of San Juan Grade, near Foot, 8 miles northwest of Salinas.	Coastal scrub habitat.	High	High
Smith's blue butterfly *Euphilotes enoptes smithi*	FT/–/–	Monterey and Santa Cruz Counties.	Coastal dunes and coastal scrub; Hostplant: *Eriogonum latifolium* and *Eriogonum parvifolium* are utilized as both larval and adult foodplants.	High	High
Tulare cuckoo wasp *Chrysis tularensis*	–/–/–	Amador, Fresno, Monterey, and Tulare Counties.	Grasslands and shrublands in flowery places. Adults feed on flower nectar. Parasitic larvae occur in bee nests.	High	Moderate
Ubick's leptonetid spider *Calileptoneta ubicki*	–/–/–	Known only from the type locality, Arroyo Seco, Monterey County.	Chaparral habitat	High	Moderate
Vernal pool fairy shrimp *Branchinecta lynchi*	FT/–/–	Endemic to the grasslands of the Central Valley, Central Coast mountains, and South Coast mountains, in astatic rain-filled pools.	Inhabit small, clear-water sandstone-depression pools and grassed swale, earth slump, or basalt-flow depression pools.	High	High
Western bumble bee *Bombus occidentalis*	–/–/–	Northern and Central California.	Grassland and meadows and other native habitat types.	High	High

Common Name *Scientific Name*	Status[a] Federal/ State/ Other	State Geographic Range	General Habitat Description	Potential to occur in Study Area[b]	Potential to occur in Management Area[b]
Fish					
South-Central California Coast steelhead *Oncorhynchus mykiss*	FT/-/-	Steelhead are found throughout coastal California and the Sacramento and San Joaquin drainages of the Central Valley.	Cool, clear, fast-flowing rivers and streams containing numerous riffles and cover. While these waterways are generally forested, snow-fed streams, steelhead trout are also found in rain-fed, intermittent streams.	High	High
Tidewater goby *Eucyclogobius newberryi*	FE/ -/ SSC	From Tillas Slough (mouth of the Smith River, Del Norte County) to Agua Hedionda Lagoon (northern San Diego County).	Found primarily in waters of coastal lagoons, estuaries, and marshes.	High	High
Pacific lamprey *Lampetra tridentata*	-/-/ SSC	Pacific Coast from Hokkaido Island, Japan, through Alaska and south to Rio Santo Domingo in Baja California.	Similar to habitat requirements listed above for steelhead. Cool, clear, fast-flowing rivers and streams containing numerous riffles and cover.	High	High
Amphibians					
Arroyo toad *Anaxyrus californicus*	FE/–/SSC	Coastal and desert drainages in central and southern California.	Low gradient, medium-to-large streams and rivers with intermittent and perennial flow. Inhabits semi-arid regions near washes or intermittent streams, including valley foothill and desert riparian, desert wash, rivers with sandy banks, willows, cottonwoods, and Sycamores, as well as loose, gravelly areas of streams in drier parts of the range.	High	High
California red-legged frog *Rana draytonii*	FT/–/SSC	Along the coast and coastal mountain ranges of California from Mendocino County to San Diego County and in the Sierra Nevada from Butte County to Stanislaus County.	Permanent and semipermanent aquatic habitats, such as creeks and coldwater ponds, with emergent and submergent vegetation; may aestivate in rodent burrows or cracks during dry periods.	High	High

Common Name ***Scientific Name***	**Status[a] Federal/ State/ Other**	**State Geographic Range**	**General Habitat Description**	**Potential to occur in Study Area[b]**	**Potential to occur in Management Area[b]**
California tiger salamander *Ambystoma californiense*	FT/ST/–	Central Valley, including Sierra Nevada foothills, up to approximately 1,000 feet in elevation, and coastal region from Sonoma County south to Santa Barbara County.	Small ponds, lakes, or vernal pools in grasslands and oak woodlands for breeding; rodent burrows, rock crevices, or fallen logs for upland cover during dry season.	High	High
Coast Range newt *Taricha torosa*	–/–/SSC	Coast and coast range mountains from Mendocino county south to San Diego county.	Frequents a wide variety of habitats and common in lowlands along sandy washes with scattered low vegetation. Requires open areas for sunning, vegetation for cover, patches of loose soil for burial and abundant supply of ants and other insects.	High	High
Foothill yellow-legged frog *Rana boylii*	–/–/SSC	Klamath, Cascade, north Coast, south Coast, Transverse, and Sierra Nevada Ranges up to approximately 6,000 feet.	Streams in woodland, forest, mixed chaparral, and wet meadow habitats with rock and gravel substrate and low overhanging vegetation along the edge; usually found near riffles with rocks and sunny banks nearby.	High	High
Santa Cruz long-toed salamander *Ambystoma macrodactylum croceum*	FE/SE/FP	Restricted locales in Santa Cruz and Monterey Counties.	Wet meadows near sea level. Aquatic larvae prefer shallow (less than 12 inches) water, using clumps of vegetation or debris for cover; adults use mammal burrows.	High	High
Western spadefoot toad *Spea hammondii*	–/–/SSC	Sierra Nevada foothills, Central Valley, Coast Ranges, coastal counties in southern California.	Shallow streams with riffles and seasonal wetlands, such as vernal pools in annual grasslands and oak woodlands.	High	High
Reptiles					
Blunt-nosed leopard lizard *Gambelia silus*	FE/SE/FP	San Joaquin Valley and adjacent foothills.	Resident of sparsely vegetated alkali and desert scrub habitats, in areas of low topographic relief.	Moderate	Low

Common Name *Scientific Name*	Status[a] Federal/ State/ Other	State Geographic Range	General Habitat Description	Potential to occur in Study Area[b]	Potential to occur in Management Area[b]
Coast horned lizard *Phrynosoma blainvillii*	–/–/SSC	Sacramento Valley, including foothills, south through Transverse and Peninsular Ranges from Ventura to San Diego County in southern California; Coast Ranges south of Sonoma County; below 4,000 feet in northern California.	A variety of habitats, from brush-lands to coniferous forests; requires open areas for sunning.	High	High
Green sea turtle *Chelonia mydas*	FT/–/–	Coastal waters, bays, and rivers throughout California.	Marine oceans and bays and rivers; Completely herbivorous; needs adequate supply of seagrasses and algae.	Moderate	Low
Northern California legless lizard *Anniella pulchra*	–/–/SSC	Occurs from the southern edge of the San Joaquin River in northern Contra Costa County south to the Ventura County.	Chaparral, coastal dunes, coastal scrub in sandy or loose loamy soils under sparse vegetation. Soil moisture is essential. They prefer soils with a high moisture content.	High	High
San Joaquin coachwhip *Masticophis flagellum ruddocki*	–/–/SSC	Arbuckle in the Sacramento Valley in Colusa County southward to the Grapevine in the Kern County portion of the San Joaquin Valley and westward into the inner South Coast Ranges.	Chenopod scrub, valley and foothill grassland, open, dry habitats with little or no tree cover. Found in valley grassland and saltbush scrub in the San Joaquin Valley. Needs mammal burrows for refuge and oviposition sites.	High	High
Two-striped gartersnake *Thamnophis hammondii*	–/–/SSC	Coastal California from vicinity of Salinas to southern San Diego County.	Highly aquatic, found in or near permanent fresh water. Often along streams with rocky beds and riparian growth. From sea level to 7,000 feet.	High	High
Western pond turtle *Emys marmorata*	–/–/SSC	From the Oregon border of Del Norte and Siskiyou Counties south along the coast to San Francisco Bay, inland through the Sacramento Valley, and on the western slope of Sierra Nevada.	Ponds, marshes, rivers, streams, and irrigation canals with muddy or rocky bottoms and with watercress, cattails, water lilies, or other aquatic vegetation in woodlands, grasslands, and open forests.	High	High

Common Name *Scientific Name*	Status[a] Federal/ State/ Other	State Geographic Range	General Habitat Description	Potential to occur in Study Area[b]	Potential to occur in Management Area[b]
Birds					
American peregrine falcon *Falco peregrinus anatum*	BCC/FP/–	Permanent resident along the north and south Coast ranges; may summer in the Cascade and Klamath Ranges and through the Sierra Nevada to Madera County; winters in the Central Valley south through the Transverse and Peninsular Ranges and the plains east of the Cascade Range.	Nests and roosts on protected ledges of high cliffs, usually adjacent to lakes, rivers, or marshes that support large prey populations.	High	Moderate
Bald eagle *Haliaeetus leucocephalus*	BGPA, BCC/SE, FP/–	Nests in Siskiyou, Modoc, Trinity, Shasta, Lassen, Plumas, Butte, Tehama, Lake, and Mendocino Counties and in the Lake Tahoe Basin; reintroduced into central coast; winter range includes the rest of California, except the southeastern deserts, very high altitudes in the Sierra Nevada, and east of the Sierra Nevada south of Mono County.	In western North America, nests and roosts in coniferous forests within 1 mile of a lake, reservoir, stream, or the ocean.	High	Moderate
Bank swallow *Riparia ripiaria*	–/ST/–	Occurs along the Sacramento River from Tehama County to Sacramento County, along the Feather and lower American Rivers, in the Owens Valley; and in the plains east of the Cascade Range in Modoc, Lassen, and northern Siskiyou Counties; small populations near the coast from San Francisco County to Monterey County.	Nests in bluffs or banks, usually adjacent to water, where the soil consists of sand or sandy loam.	High	High

Common Name *Scientific Name*	**Status[a] Federal/ State/ Other**	**State Geographic Range**	**General Habitat Description**	**Potential to occur in Study Area[b]**	**Potential to occur in Management Area[b]**
Burrowing owl *Athene cunicularia*	BCC/–/SSC	Lowlands throughout California, including the Central Valley, northeastern plateau, southeastern deserts, and coastal areas; rare along south coast.	Level, open, dry, heavily grazed or low stature grassland or desert vegetation to forage in with available burrows for refuge and nesting.	High	High
California Condor *Gymnogyps californianus*	FE/SE/FP	Narrowly distributed in central and southern California.	Require vast expanses of open savannah, grasslands, and foothill chaparral in mountain ranges of moderate altitude. Forages up to 100 miles from roost/nest.	High	Moderate
California horned lark *Eremophila alpestris actia*	–/–/WL	Coastal regions, chiefly from Sonoma County to San Diego County. Also main part of San Joaquin Valley and east to foothills.	Short-grass prairie, "bald" hills, mountain meadows, open coastal plains, fallow grain fields, alkali flats.	High	High
California least tern *Sterna antillarum browni*	FE/SE/FP	San Francisco Bay south to San Diego County.	Nests along the coast; colonial breeder on bare or sparsely vegetated, flat substrates, such as sand beaches, alkali flats, landfills, or paved areas.	High	High
California Ridgway's rail *Rallus obsoletus obsoletus*	FE/SE/FP	Salt water and brackish marshes traversed by tidal sloughs in the vicinity of San Francisco Bay south to San Diego.	Brackish marsh, marsh and swamp, salt marsh, and wetlands. Associated with abundant growths of pickleweed, but feeds away from cover on invertebrates from mud-bottomed sloughs.	Moderate	Low
Coopers hawk *Accipiter cooperii*	–/–/ WL	Distributed throughout California.	Woodland, chiefly of open, interrupted or marginal type. Nest sites mainly in riparian growths of deciduous trees, as in canyon bottoms on river floodplains; also, live oaks.	High	High
Ferruginous hawk *Buteo regalis*	BGPA, BCC/–/WL	Distributed throughout California, rare in the northernmost coastal portion of the state.	Open grasslands, sagebrush flats, desert scrub, low foothills and fringes of pinyon and juniper habitats.	High	High

Common Name *Scientific Name*	Status[a] Federal/ State/ Other	State Geographic Range	General Habitat Description	Potential to occur in Study Area[b]	Potential to occur in Management Area[b]
Golden eagle (nesting) *Aquila chrysaetos*	BCC/FP/–	Foothills and mountains throughout California. Uncommon nonbreeding visitor to lowlands such as the Central Valley.	Nest on cliffs and escarpments or in tall trees overlooking open country. Forages in annual grasslands, chaparral, and oak woodlands with plentiful medium and large-sized mammals.	High	Moderate
Great blue heron (Nesting) *Ardea herodias*	–/–/–	Distributed throughout California.	Colonial nester in tall trees, cliff sides, and sequestered spots on marshes. Rookery sites in close proximity to foraging areas: marshes, lake margins, tide-flats, rivers and streams, wet meadows.	High	High
Least Bell's vireo *Vireo bellii pusilus*	FE/SE/–	Small summer resident populations remain in southern California in low riparian in vicinity of water or in dry river bottoms; below 2000 feet.	Riparian thickets either near water or in dry portions of river bottoms; nests along margins of bushes and forages low to the ground; may also be found using mesquite and arrow weed in desert canyons.	High	Moderate
long-eared owl *Asio otus*	–/–/SSC	Found throughout most of California.	Riparian woodland of live oak, gray pine, valley oak, cottonwood, willow, surrounded by chaparral habitat (chamise, ceanothus), valley meadow (exotic grasses), and historic ranchland.	High	Moderate
Marbled murrelet	FT/SE/–	From Eureka to Oregon border and from Half Moon Bay to Santa Cruz.	Feeds near-shore; nests inland along coast, nests in old-growth redwood-dominated forests, up to 6 miles inland, often in southwestern Douglas firs.	Low	Low
Northern harrier *Circus cyaneus*	–/–/SSC	Throughout lowland California, but species has been recorded in fall at high elevations.	Grasslands, meadows, marshes, and seasonal and agricultural wetlands; nests on the ground within a thicket of vegetation.	High	High

Common Name *Scientific Name*	Status[a] Federal/ State/ Other	State Geographic Range	General Habitat Description	Potential to occur in Study Area[b]	Potential to occur in Management Area[b]
Prairie falcon *Falco mexicanus*	BCC/ –/WL	Distributed throughout California.	Inhabits dry, open terrain, either level or hilly in grassland and scrublands. Breeding sites located on cliffs. Forages far afield, even to marshlands and ocean shores.	High	High
Purple martin *Progne subis*	–/–/SSC	Coastal and mountainous regions of California.	Inhabits woodlands, low elevation coniferous forest of Douglas-fir, ponderosa pine, and Monterey pine. Nest often located in tall, isolated tree/snag.	High	Moderate
Sharp-shinned hawk *Accipiter striatus*	–/–/WL	Distributed throughout California.	Ponderosa pine, black oak, riparian deciduous, mixed conifer, and Jeffrey pine habitats. Prefers riparian areas. North-facing slopes with plucking perches are critical requirements. Nests usually within 275 feet of water.	High	Moderate
Short-eared owl *Asio flammeus*	–/–/SSC	Distributed throughout California.	Found in swamp lands, both fresh and salt; lowland meadows; irrigated alfalfa fields. Tule patches/tall grass needed for nesting/daytime seclusion. Nests on dry ground in depressions concealed in vegetation.	Moderate	Moderate
Southwestern willow flycatcher *Empidonax traillii extimus*	FE/SE/–	Breed in patches of riparian habitat throughout the American southwest. Summer residents in wet meadow and montane riparian habitats in the Cascade and Sierra Nevada ranges.	Dense willow thickets are required for nesting and roosting within close proximity of water; dense riparian habitats along rivers and streams are required for breeding. The presence of dense vegetation is the most important characteristic of the habitat.	Moderate	Low

Common Name *Scientific Name*	Status[a] Federal/ State/ Other	State Geographic Range	General Habitat Description	Potential to occur in Study Area[b]	Potential to occur in Management Area[b]
Swainson's hawk *Buteo swainsoni*	BCC/ST/–	Lower Sacramento and San Joaquin Valleys, the Klamath Basin, and Butte Valley; highest nesting densities occur near Davis and Woodland, Yolo County.	Nests in oaks or cottonwoods in or near riparian habitats; forages in grasslands, irrigated pastures, and grain fields.	Moderate	Moderate
Tricolored blackbird *Agelaius tricolor* (nesting colony)	BCC/SE/SSC	Permanent resident in the Central Valley and vicinity from Butte County to Kern County; breeds at scattered coastal locations from Marin County south to San Diego County, and at scattered locations in Lake, Sonoma, and Solano Counties; rare nester in Siskiyou, Modoc, and Lassen Counties.	Nests in dense colonies in emergent marsh vegetation, such as tules and cattails, or upland sites with blackberries, nettles, thistles, and grainfields; habitat must be large enough to support 50 pairs; probably requires water at or near the nesting colony.	High	High
Western snowy plover *Charadrius alexandrinus nivosus*	FT/–/SSC	Population defined as those birds that nest adjacent to or near tidal waters, including all nests along the mainland coast, peninsulas, offshore islands, and adjacent bays and estuaries; 20 breeding sites are known in California from Del Norte to San Diego County.	Coastal beaches above the normal high tide limit in flat, open areas with sandy or saline substrates; vegetation and driftwood are usually sparse or absent.	High	High
White-tailed kite *Elanus leucurus*	–/–/FP	Lowland areas west of Sierra Nevada from the head of the Sacramento Valley south, including coastal valleys and foothills, to western San Diego County at the Mexico border.	Dense-topped trees or shrubs for nesting, open grasslands, marshes, or agricultural fields for foraging.	High	High

Common Name *Scientific Name*	Status[a] Federal/ State/ Other	State Geographic Range	General Habitat Description	Potential to occur in Study Area[b]	Potential to occur in Management Area[b]
Yellow-billed cuckoo *Coccyzus americanus*	FT/SE/-	Most of North America from southern Canada to the Greater Antilles and northern Mexico. Recently distribution in the west has contracted. The northern limit of breeding in the coastal states is now in Sacramento Valley. Overwinters from Columbia and Venezuela, south to northern Argentina.	Cottonwood and willow riparian forest and woodlands with large blocks of habitat for nesting, between 25 to 100 acres.	Moderate	Low
Yellow rail *Coturnicops noveboracensis*	–/–/SSC	Summer resident in eastern Sierra Nevada in Mono County.	Freshwater marshlands.	High	High
Yellow warbler *Setophaga petechia*	–/–/SSC	Summer resident throughout California.	Frequently found nesting and foraging in willow shrubs and thickets, and in other riparian plants including cottonwoods, sycamores, ash, and alders. Riparian plant associations in close proximity to water.	Moderate	Moderate
Mammals					
American badger *Taxidea taxus*	–/–/SSC	The majority of the northern, western, and central United States south to Baja California.	Grasslands, savannas, mountain meadows, and open areas of desert scrub that support small mammal burrow complexes.	High	High
Big-eared kangaroo rat *Dipodomys venustus elephantinus*	–/–/SSC	Southern portion of the Gabilan Range in San Benito and Monterey Counties.	Chaparral-covered slopes of the southern part of the Gabilian Range, in the vicinity of the Pinnacles. Forages under shrubs and in the open. Burrows for cover and for nesting.	Moderate	Low

Common Name *Scientific Name*	Status[a] Federal/ State/ Other	State Geographic Range	General Habitat Description	Potential to occur in Study Area[b]	Potential to occur in Management Area[b]
Fringed myotis *Myotis thysanodes*	–/–/WBWH-High	Throughout California except in the southern desert regions and central valley.	In a wide variety of habitats, optimal habitats are pinyon-juniper, valley foothill hardwood and hardwood-conifer. Uses caves, mines, buildings or crevices for maternity colonies and roosts.	Moderate	Low
Giant kangaroo rat *Dipodomys ingens*	FE/SE/–	Western portion of San Joaquin Valley.	Annual grasslands, marginal habitat in alkali scrub. Needs level terrain and sandy soils for burrowing.	Low	Low
Hoary bat *Lasiurus cinereus*	–/–/WBWG-Medium	Widespread throughout California.	Roosts in trees, typically within forests.	High	Moderate
Long-eared myotis *Myotis evotis*	–/–/WBWG-Medium	Coastal and mountainous regions throughout California.	Found in all brush, woodland and forest habitats from sea level to about 9000 feet. Prefers coniferous woodlands and forests. Nursery colonies in buildings, crevices, spaces under bark, and snags. Caves used primarily as night roosts.	High	Moderate
Monterey dusky-footed woodrat *Neotoma fuscipes annectens*	–/–/SSC	Monterey County and northern San Luis Obispo County.	Forest habitats of moderate canopy and moderate to dense understory. Also in chaparral habitats.	High	Moderate
Pallid bat *Antrozous pallidus*	–/–/SSC, WBWG-High	Widespread throughout California in deserts, grasslands, shrublands, woodlands and forests. Most common in open, dry habitats with rocky areas for roosting.	Occurs in a variety of habitats from desert to coniferous forest; most closely associated with oak, yellow pine, redwood, and giant sequoia habitats in northern California and oak woodland, grassland, and desert scrub in southern California; relies heavily on trees for cavity roosts, but will use crevices in human-made structures.	High	High

Common Name *Scientific Name*	**Status[a] Federal/ State/ Other**	**State Geographic Range**	**General Habitat Description**	**Potential to occur in Study Area[b]**	**Potential to occur in Management Area[b]**
Salinas harvest mouse *Reithrodontomys megalotis distichlis*	–/–/–	Salinas River and Monterey region.	Occurs in fresh and brackish water wetlands and probably in the adjacent uplands around the mouth of the Salinas River.	High	Moderate
Salinas pocket mouse *Perognathus inornatus psammophilus*	–/–/SSC	Salinas Valley.	Annual grassland and desert shrub communities in the Salinas Valley. Fine-textured, sandy, friable soils. Burrows for cover and nesting.	High	Moderate
San Joaquin kit fox *Vulpies macrotis mutica*	FE/ST/–	San Joaquin Valley and adjacent open foothills to the west; recent records from 17 counties extending from Kern County north to Contra Costa County.	Saltbush scrub, grassland, oak, savanna, and freshwater scrub.	High	High
Southern sea otter *Enhydra lutris nereis*	FT/–/FP	From about Pigeon Point, San Mateo County to Gaviota State Beach, Santa Barbara County.	Nearshore marine environments. Needs canopies of giant kelp and bull kelp for rafting and feeding. Prefers rocky substrates with abundant invertebrates.	High	High
Townsend's big-eared bat *Corynorhinus townsendii*	–/–/SSC, WBWG-High	Throughout California in a wide variety of habitats. Most common in mesic sites.	Roosts in caves, tunnels, mines, and dark attics of abandoned buildings; very sensitive to disturbances and may abandon a roost after one onsite visit.	High	High
Western mastiff bat *Eumops perotis californicus*	–/–/SSC, WBWG-High	Occurs primarily at low to mid elevations and widely distributed throughout the southern coast ranges; recent surveys have detected the species north to the Oregon border.	Found in a wide variety of habitats from desert scrub to montane conifer; roosts and breeds in deep, narrow rock crevices, but may also use crevices in trees, buildings, and tunnels.	High	Moderate

Common Name *Scientific Name*	Status[a] Federal/ State/ Other	State Geographic Range	General Habitat Description	Potential to occur in Study Area[b]	Potential to occur in Management Area[b]
Western red bat *Lasiurus blossevillii*	–/–/SSC, WBWG-High	Year-round range spans the Central Valley, Sierra Nevada foothills, Coast Ranges, and coast except Humboldt and Del Norte Counties.	Mature riparian broadleaf forest in the Central Valley is primary summer breeding habitat for the species in California (females and pups); riverside orchards may also be used as maternity roosts; roosts alone or in small family groups in tree foliage, occasionally shrubs; prefers habitat edges and mosaics with trees that are protected from above and open below with open areas for foraging, including grasslands, shrublands, and open woodlands; unsubstantiated records of hibernation in leaf litter during the winter.	High	Moderate
Western small-footed myotis *Myotis ciliolabrum*	–/–/WBWG-Medium	South and central coast and mountainous regions of California.	Wide range of habitats mostly arid wooded and brushy uplands near water. Seeks cover in caves, buildings, mines, and crevices. Prefers open stands in forests and woodlands. Requires drinking water. Feeds on a wide variety of small flying insects.	High	Moderate
Yuma myotis *Myotis yumanensis*	–/–/ WBWH-Low	Throughout California except in the southern desert regions.	Optimal habitats are open forests and woodlands with sources of water over which to feed. Distribution is closely tied to bodies of water. Maternity colonies in caves, mines, buildings, bridges, or crevices.	High	Moderate

Common Name *Scientific Name*	**Status[a] Federal/ State/ Other**	**State Geographic Range**	**General Habitat Description**	**Potential to occur in Study Area[b]**	**Potential to occur in Management Area[b]**

[a] Species Status explanations:

Federal

FE = listed as endangered under the federal Endangered Species Act.
FT = listed as threatened under the federal Endangered Species Act.
BCC = bird of conservation concern – USFWS identified species as having a high conservation priority.
BGPA = Bald and Golden Eagle Protection Act
– = no listing.

State

SE = listed as endangered under the California Endangered Species Act.
ST = listed as threatened under the California Endangered Species Act.
FP = fully protected under the California Fish and Game Code.
– = no listing.

Other

SSC = species of special concern in California.
WL = species on CDFW maintained list (i.e., Watch List) that were previously designated as SSC but no longer merit that status, or which do not yet meet SSC criteria, but for which there is concern and a need for additional information to clarify status.

Western Bat Working Group (WBWG) Conservation Priority Available: <http://wbwg.org/matrices/species-matrix/>

High = species imperiled or at high risk of imperilment
Medium = most research and closer attention needed to adequately assess species' status and needed conservation actions
Low = most of existing data support stable population of species; potential for major changes in status in near future Low

[b] Potential for Occurrence in Management and/or Study Areas

The determinations of the potential for each species to occur is generally based on the following criteria:

Low: The area is within the species range, and suitable habitat for the species may or may not occur in the area, but species was not recorded in the area.

Moderate: The area is within the species range, and suitable habitat for the species is present in the area, but records for the species in the area are only historic, uncertain, or unavailable (CRPR 4 species).

High: The area is within the species range and suitable habitat for the species is present in the area, and there are one or more recent records of the species in the area.

Appendix F
Species Account

F1.1 Steelhead Trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss)*

F1.1.1 Legal Status

F1.1.1.1 State

California state species protection status listings are governed by the California Endangered Species Act (CESA). Steelhead are not listed under the CESA.

F1.1.1.2 Federal

All steelhead (the anadromous form of *Oncorhynchus mykiss*) in the study area belong to the South-Central California Coast steelhead (SCCCS) Distinct Population Segment (DPS), which is federally listed as threatened (62 Federal Register [FR]: 43937-43954) under the federal Endangered Species Act (ESA). In 2016, the National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) completed a 5-year status review of the SCCCS DPS and recommended that it remain classified as a threatened species. The SCCCS DPS includes all naturally spawned anadromous steelhead populations below natural and human-made impassable barriers in streams from the Pajaro River (inclusive) to, but not including, the Santa Maria River, California.

F1.1.1.3 Critical Habitat

Section 3 of the ESA (16 U.S.C. 1532(5)) defines *critical habitat* as

> "(i) the specific areas within the geographical area occupied by the species, at the time it is listed on which are found those physical or biological features (I) essential to the conservation of the species and (II) which may require special management considerations or protection; and (ii) specific areas outside the geographical area occupied by the species at the time it is listed."

The freshwater primary constituent elements (PCEs) that define the physical and biological features of steelhead critical habitat are (1) spawning habitat, including spawning substrate, and adequate water quantity and quality; (2) freshwater rearing habitat including floodplain connectivity and natural escape and velocity cover; and (3) freshwater migration corridors free of obstructions, with water quantity and quality conditions that allow movement (70 FR 52488–52627).

Critical habitat was designated for all steelhead populations across California in 2005 (70 FR 52488; Figure F1-1). Critical habitat for SCCCS in the Salinas River watershed was designated from the mouth of the Salinas River upstream to 7.5 miles below the Santa Margarita Lake, as well as the Arroyo Seco River, Nacimiento River (below the Nacimiento Dam), San Antonio River (below the San Antonio Dam), and the upper Salinas River tributaries (70 FR 52488–52627; Figure F1-2). The PCEs of critical habitat for steelhead in each subbasin of the Salinas River are listed in Table F1-1.

Table F1-1. Number of Stream Miles Designated as Critical Habitat for South-Central California Coast Steelhead within Selected Subbasins of the Salinas River Watershed

Subpopulation	Spawning	Rearing	Migration
Arroyo Seco	68.5	68.5	84.6
San Antonio/Nacimiento	20.6	20.6	20.6
Upper Salinas	21.1	40.2	48.1
Lower Salinas	2.4	9.0	149.1

F1.1.2 Taxonomy

The taxonomic history and nomenclature of steelhead is convoluted and has been modified several times throughout history. The species is commonly known by its colloquial names, *trout* and *rainbow trout*, although it has been described with at least 22 scientific names in five genera (Scott and Crossman 1973). Until 1989, the primary scientific name used for steelhead from western North America was *Salmo gairdneri*. However, it was shown that steelhead were more similar to Pacific salmon (*Oncorhynchus*) than to Atlantic salmon (*Salmo*), and that *Salmo gairdneri* was the same species as the previously described *Salmo mykiss* (Smith and Stearley 1989). Therefore, the scientific name *Oncorhynchus mykiss* was adopted for steelhead and rainbow trout in 1989. Rainbow trout are found in freshwater and do not migrate out to the ocean, while steelhead are anadromous and migrate out to the ocean and return to freshwater to spawn.

F1.1.3 Distribution

F1.1.3.1 State

Historical

Steelhead were one of the most widely distributed species in the world. Within California, they were historically found along the entire coast and inland in the Sacramento and San Joaquin River drainages (Moyle 2002; Figure F1-1). The historical distribution also included most southern California streams to the United States–Mexico border and into Baja California.

Recent

Steelhead are currently found throughout coastal California and the Sacramento and San Joaquin River drainages of the Central Valley. However, there is a limited distribution within southern California streams; due to water infrastructure development and climate change, many populations have been extirpated or are present only as remnant populations with occasional runs of diminished size (National Marine Fisheries Service 2012).

F1.1.3.2 Study Area

Historical

The Salinas River watershed is the largest coastal watershed contained entirely within California and contains two subbasins: the lower Salinas River watershed, which includes the Gabilan Creek and Arroyo Seco River watersheds, and the upper Salinas River watershed, which includes the San Antonio, Nacimiento, and Estrella River watersheds (National Marine Fisheries Service 2013).

Steelhead were historically observed throughout both subbasins, and the population was largely supported by spawning and rearing habitat in the upper Salinas, Nacimiento, San Antonio, and Arroyo Seco Rivers (California Department of Fish and Game 1965). The Salinas River watershed historically provided approximately 98.9 stream miles of available habitat for steelhead (Becker et al. 2010). However, the mainstem Salinas River likely provided poor spawning and rearing habitat due to its muddy and sandy substrate, although it was and is an essential migration corridor to quality spawning and rearing habitat in the tributaries (Titus et al. 2002).

Recent

The Salinas River watershed is currently estimated to provide approximately 55.0 stream miles of available habitat for steelhead (Becker et al. 2010). The Arroyo Seco River contains the majority of spawning habitat in the basin and half of the rearing habitat (National Marine Fisheries Service 2007). Water infrastructure development, land use, and water management practices have gradually reduced available habitat and instream flows in the watershed. Dams on the upper mainstem of the Salinas, Nacimiento, and San Antonio Rivers have blocked access to historical spawning and rearing habitat. The majority of steelhead are now confined to the Arroyo Seco River due to its relatively close proximity to the Pacific Ocean. While resident individuals of steelhead persist in the upper Salinas River watershed (including above the Nacimiento and San Antonio Dams) (Titus et al. 2002), several factors, including Salinas River flows, currently prohibit this subset of steelhead from contributing to the overall steelhead population in the Salinas River watershed.

F1.1.4 Natural History

F1.1.4.1 Habitat Requirements

Steelhead are largely found in cool, clear, fast-flowing rivers and streams containing numerous riffles and cover (Moyle 2002). While these waterways are generally forested, snow-fed streams, steelhead trout are also found in rain-fed, intermittent streams in central California (Boughton et al. 2009). Water temperature is an important habitat factor. Optimal growth occurs at 15–18 degrees Celsius (°C), and mortality typically results at 24–27°C, although new research is revealing populations of trout that are sustaining life in conditions previously considered lethal (Moyle 2002; Verhille et al. 2016; Poletto et al. 2017). Myrick and Cech (2004) found optimal temperatures to be 7–10°C for eggs and alevin and 1–25°C for juveniles, with optimal growth occurring at 19°C. Thermal refugia, or areas with cooler temperatures, such as confluence pools, are important for maintaining populations in warmer streams (Sutton et al. 2007). Steelhead are typically found in streams with dissolved oxygen concentrations above 6.5 milligrams per liter (mg/L) (near saturation levels, in many cases), although they can survive at levels as low as 1.5–2.0 mg/L for short periods of time (Davis 1975; Mathews and Berg 1997).

Streambed substrate is an important habitat factor as spawning occurs in places where the streambed is composed of gravelly substrate and fast-moving water, usually in riffles or pool tails. Gravel sizes of 1–13 centimeters (cm) are generally preferred for egg-laying redds (Moyle 2002). Substrate size is correlated with steelhead growth, and spawning bed enhancement can improve embryo survival (Merz et al. 2004).

Stream cover is another key habitat feature, with overhanging riparian vegetation and instream woody debris shown to be an essential component of juvenile rearing habitat (Shirvell 1990; Bugert et al. 1991; Quinones and Mulligan 2005; Thompson et al. 2012). Juvenile fry often have poor swimming ability and, as a result, they move into shallow, low-velocity areas in side channels and along channel margins to escape high velocities and predators (Everest and Chapman 1972). Juveniles progressively move toward deeper water as they grow (Bjornn and Reiser 1991). The presence of large woody debris in streams has also been shown to be especially important for pool formation (Thompson et al. 2012). Steelhead tend to use riffles and other habitats not strongly associated with cover during summer rearing more than other salmonids.

To complete the migratory phase of their life cycle, steelhead require connectivity with the ocean during several time periods of the year. Habitat conditions in the Salinas River Lagoon are generally not suitable for steelhead spawning or egg incubation but potentially support rearing when conditions are right. When the river mouth is open, the lagoon is tidally influenced and sustains saltwater conditions, and migration to and from the ocean is possible. When the river mouth is closed, the lagoon is typically freshwater with good water quality conditions, specifically when Salinas River inflow is adequate, and no saltwater intrusion occurs. However, during these semi-lentic periods, stratification of the lagoon may occur, with a solute-rich and oxygen-depleted stratum of water on the bottom of the channel (hypolimnion), which is not suitable for rearing juveniles in certain locations. When the water in the estuary is stratified, the water in the top layer (epilimnion) may provide available rearing habitat for steelhead, although elevated temperatures and low dissolved oxygen levels can occur here as well. Accordingly, the lagoon is believed to be used primarily as a migration corridor by adult and juvenile steelhead (Denise Duffy and Associates 2015).

F1.1.4.2 Movement

O. mykiss generally have one of two distinct life patterns: resident rainbow trout and sea-run or anadromous steelhead. Some resident rainbow trout do migrate within a river system for the purpose of spawning or foraging; however, most rainbow trout often spend their entire lives within a few hundred meters of stream or within the same lake (Moyle 1976).

Steelhead life history strategies are the most variable of all salmonids, and times spent in freshwater and in the ocean vary according to geography, life history patterns, and effects of natural phenomena and abiotic and biotic factors. Most individuals spend 1–3 years in fresh water and 1–4 years in the ocean before returning to fresh water to spawn (Shapovalov and Taft 1954; Barnhart 1986; Busby et al. 1996; McEwan 2001). While in the ocean, steelhead probably do not range too far from the coast, although ocean catch data are limited (Moyle 2002). Most anadromous salmonids (e.g., Chinook salmon [*O. tshawytscha*]) die after spawning, but steelhead are iteroparous, meaning they may survive to spawn more than once. Steelhead may spawn up to four times per life span; however, of the steelhead that spawn multiple times, 70–85% spawn only twice (Barnhart 1986).

Adult steelhead migrate to fresh water between November and June, often peaking in February. Adult escapement monitoring in the Salinas River watershed has revealed highly variable timing of upstream migration, which has occurred as early as the first half of December and as late as the end of March (Table F1-2). Adult migration generally occurs after periods of high flow, and only when the lagoon has previously breached. Spawning begins shortly after adult fish reach spawning areas. Most of the spawning in the Salinas River watershed occurs in the tributary rivers and streams.

After a period of 1 or more years, juvenile steelhead undergo the biological process of *smoltification* in which juvenile salmonids become physiologically adapted for downstream migration and entry into saltwater. Smoltification may commence sometime in mid- to late winter as juvenile steelhead become fully ready to make the migration sometime in spring. In California, the outmigration of steelhead smolts typically begins in March and ends in late May or June (Satterthwaite et al. 2009). In the Carmel River (a coastal river), most juvenile steelhead migrate to the ocean between April and June (Snider 1983). This is the typical period for the smolt migration of steelhead in coastal watersheds along the western United States (Busby et al. 1996). Younger juveniles and those that have not undergone smoltification may disperse downstream and rear in mainstem, estuarine, and lagoon habitats. Juvenile steelhead often migrate downstream in search for available habitat, leading to significant percentages of the juvenile population rearing in coastal lagoons and estuaries (Bjornn 1971; Shapovalov and Taft 1954; Zedonis 1992; Hayes et al. 2008). This adaptation of rearing in coastal lagoons and estuaries prior to smoltification is thought to be an important component of steelhead life history at a time when physiological adaptation, foraging, and refugia from predators are critical (Healey 1982; Simenstad et al. 1982).

Downstream outmigration monitoring in the Salinas River watershed has revealed that juvenile outmigration peaks as a result of increased stream flow and turbidity associated with storm events (Figure F1-3). This relationship is particularly apparent on the Arroyo Seco River, owing to the larger number of downstream migrants relative to other trapping locations. Notably, it appears that juvenile steelhead in the Salinas River watershed are able to initiate downstream migration in response to increases in flow, irrespective of month. Whereas in other river systems with more constant flow, outmigration of juvenile steelhead can occur during all months of the year. To cope with this challenge, steelhead in the watershed appear to respond well to environmental cues, though these cues may occur outside the currently monitored timeframe. Outmigration monitoring using a rotary screw trap typically takes place from early March until late May, and inspection of annual flow and migration patterns, particularly in the Arroyo Seco River, reveals that emigration is likely to occur before and after this period (evidenced by documentation of steelhead as early as the first day of monitoring and as late as the last day of monitoring). Based on scale analysis of captured individuals, steelhead in the Salinas River watershed appear to migrate at four different ages (young of the year, 1+, 2+; and 3+; Figure F1-4). The majority of fish migrated downstream at Age 1 (67%), followed by Age 2 individuals (30%), Age 3 individuals (2%) and a handful of young of the year (FISHBIO, unpublished data).

The mainstem Salinas River is a migration corridor for adult steelhead migrating from the ocean to spawn in tributaries (National Marine Fisheries Service 2007Kelts (adults that have just spawned), smolts, and juveniles use the river to migrate downstream to the ocean or lagoon (National Marine Fisheries Service 2007Before the Nacimiento and San Antonio Reservoirs were constructed, the Salinas River had little or no summertime flow, in part because of an imbalance between the rate of groundwater withdrawal from pumping and recharge from natural flows (National Marine Fisheries Service 2003)r in the mainstem Salinas River, which is currently limited by the availability of adequate flows to provide passage over long distances to suitable spawning and rearing habitat (National Marine Fisheries Service 2007). Adequate migration flows vary annually due to changes in channel geometry, although g levees, channel maintenance, road crossings, and removal of riparian vegetation have reduced the availability and quality of migration habitat for steelhead (National Marine Fisheries Service 2007; Monterey County Water Resources Agency 2013).Monterey County Water Resources Agency 2013).

Age and Growth analysis of captured individuals in the Arroyo Seco provides evidence that juvenile production can occur even in years (winters) without connectivity to the marine environment (i.e., no breaching of the lagoon’s sandbar). Three individuals collected in spring 2017 were determined to belong to year classes 2015 (n=1) and 2016 (n=2). This is a clear indication that *O. mykiss* in the

Salinas River basin exhibit a resident or partially migratory life history, permitting population persistence during extended periods (multi-year) of isolation from the marine environment.

Table F1-2. South Central California Coast Steelhead Life History in the Salinas River

Steelhead		Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	June	July	Aug	Sept	Oct	Nov	Dec
Adult Migration	Pacific Ocean to Salinas River and Tributaries												
Spawning	Upper Salinas Tributaries												
Egg Incubation	Upper Salinas Tributaries												
Juvenile Rearing	Upper Salinas Tributaries												
Juvenile Movement[a]	Upper Salinas Tributaries to Salinas River and Pacific Ocean												

[a] Juvenile movement may occur outside of the indicated months due to increased stream flows, but studies are only conducted from early March to May; therefore, there are no data to support movement during other months.

F1.1.4.3 Ecological Relationships

The Salinas River watershed subpopulation of steelhead resides in an inland ecoregion, which is typified by drier and warmer conditions than the coastal region. This population also has longer migration routes and differing hydrologic regimes, which confer unique selective regimes that likely supported and may still support unique life history traits that have allowed these steelhead to persist in this ecoregion. Fish surviving in this environment need to possess the ability to migrate longer distances under more variable hydrologic conditions than in shorter, wetter coastal areas and the ability to acclimate to warmer water temperatures. Lastly, they likely display increased plasticity between anadromous and resident forms of steelhead, as this permits them to better survive periodic drought conditions when reduced flows in the mainstem prevent migration to and from the ocean. The retention of these traits within the DPS may take on added importance as climate conditions increase the likelihood of serious droughts, which is expected (see section 3.5.9 for details on climate change). Historically, different geographic and life history components that were minor producers during one climatic regime have dominated during others. Hilborn et al. (2003) used this observation to demonstrate that the bio-complexity of fish stocks is critical for maintaining their resilience to environmental change (i.e., portfolio effect), and it is likely that this resilience is important for steelhead populations in the Salinas River.

Migratory behavior of adult steelhead is of particular interest in the Salinas River as monitoring has shown opportunistic migration of adult fish at all times of the year, which is an unusual life history strategy for steelhead populations (FISHBIO in prep). Escapement monitoring has revealed that adult steelhead migration into the lagoon coincides with or occurs after periods of increased flow, and only in years the lagoon is connected to the ocean. However, a prolonged amount of time can lapse between the lagoon disconnecting from the ocean and the first migratory adult steelhead observed at the weir (located at river mile 2.75), resulting in uncertainty about the life history of adult steelhead migration. Notably, in 2011–2012, the lagoon was closed during the period of weir operation, but it remained open the previous summer and until September 21, 2011. It is unknown if steelhead passages in early 2012 are attributable to fish that reared in the lagoon environment or fish that had entered the lagoon from the ocean before the sandbar closed. Although low levels of abundance of steelhead in the lagoon and lack of documentation of adult fish in the lagoon habitat suggest that rearing may occur in the lagoon, this somewhat unusual behavior is likely better explained by ocean maturation and temporary staging in the lagoon until flow conditions improved. No upstream passages have been documented in years when the lagoon has not breached. However, delayed migration—sometime after the lagoon has closed—has been noted following an initial increase in upstream passage. This suggests that steelhead exhibiting ocean-run life history traits may opportunistically enter the lagoon when it is connected to the ocean, and they commence upstream migration after a staging period in the lagoon that may last up to several weeks.

Steelhead exhibiting estuary-life history traits may opportunistically enter the lagoon as a juvenile or subadult and reside in the lagoon over summer if environmental and water quality conditions permit. The two life-history strategies could explain what appears to be two different migration periods in some years. For example, an initial migration period occurred in December 2012 and January 2013 when the lagoon was connected to the ocean and may have been composed primarily of ocean-run steelhead, and a second migration period occurred in February and March 2013 when the lagoon was closed, and which may have been comprised primarily of estuary-run steelhead (Figure F1-3).

Based on watershed size, location, ecological context, and overall status of SCCCS, a viable steelhead population in the Salinas River has the potential to ameliorate the overall extinction risk of the DPS, because it lessens fragmentation in the distribution of SCCCS and contributes to the genetic diversity of the species. The Nacimiento River and San Antonio River subpopulations (part of the upper Salinas River) are two of the three populations at highest risk of extirpation in the SCCCS DPS. If the Salinas River watershed subpopulations were lost, the only remaining subpopulations in the interior ecoregion would be those of the Pajaro River basin. Extinction risk profiles suggest that habitat loss has been acute in the Pajaro River basin and that the subpopulations' abundance, distribution, growth rate, and genetics are in poor condition. The risk of losing the entire inland geographic area inhabited by SCCCS is high. Thus, as a substantial component of the inland ecoregion, the Salinas subpopulations are important to the conservation of ecological diversity of the SCCCS DPS.

Wild populations generally have some degree of genetic population structure based on biogeographic patterns that range from complete genetic isolation to free genetic exchange. These biogeographic patterns have important implications for genetic management and extinction risk because they are often altered by human actions that can affect fitness and local adaptation (Meffe and Carroll 1997). The spatial relationship between subpopulations in the SCCCS DPS is one of increasing isolation. This combined with declines in abundance is leading to the imminent loss of four of the 12 subpopulations (National Marine Fisheries Service 2013).

Steelhead, like many spatially structured species, exhibit some degree of metapopulation dynamics, whereby local populations are connected through migration corridors and productivity of any given local population may be the result of local habitat conditions and/or level of migration with other populations in the metapopulation. This means that replacement of individuals to sustain the population is achieved either by reproduction from within the population or immigration from outside source populations. For SCCCS subpopulations, straying between subpopulations is an important factor in maintaining metapopulation structure (Hill et al. 2002; Keefer and Caudill 2012). In the SCCCS DPS, NMFS (2013) concluded that no current SCCCS subpopulation has the requisite viability to function as a source population for migrants. Although some exchange of strays may still occur at low levels, the role of strays for bolstering population size has been greatly diminished across the entire DPS. Lack of migrant sources adds demographic and genetic risk to the DPS.

Connectivity between subpopulations is an important factor affecting gene flow and recolonization potential (Good et al. 2005) and is influenced by migration distance and ease of migration. Patterns of isolation by distance are reflected in genetic signatures of multiple steelhead populations along the California coast (Garza et al. 2014), suggesting that the greater the migration distance, the less reproductive interaction occurs between subpopulations. While challenges to migration do not preferentially deter straying, they do reduce the success of any adult attempting to migrate and increase the degree of isolation. Demographic and genetic connectivity among subpopulations in the Salinas River watershed (i.e., upper Salinas, San Antonio/Nacimiento, and Arroyo Seco Rivers) is important for maintaining the Salinas watershed populations as a whole and for preventing erosion of genetic diversity.

Steelhead populations of the Salinas River watershed play a significant role in the survival of the SCCCS DPS because (1) they represent a large distributional component of the overall range of the DPS, (2) they inhabit ecologically distinct areas unique to the DPS, and (3) they exhibit unique life history traits (National Marine Fisheries Service 2013). To be considered viable, a DPS should contain multiple subpopulations, maintain wide geographic distribution, and contain subpopulations that display diverse life-histories and phenotypes (McElhany et al. 2000). These Salinas River watershed populations contribute to all three of these viability criteria.

The loss of the populations in the Salinas River watershed would mean the removal of the largest diverse populations of SCCCS in the entire DPS. In terms of watershed acreage and stream miles, the Salinas River is the largest river in the DPS, comprising approximately 48% of the DPS in terms of acreage and total stream miles (National Marine Fisheries Service 2007). Currently, the Salinas River watershed has approximately 19% of the DPS in terms of miles of occupied spawning and/or rearing habitat (Table F1-3). Of the five larger watersheds in the DPS, the Salinas River has the most occupied habitat remaining. Without the Salinas River watershed population, only smaller coastal populations and the Pajaro River basin populations would remain, and the total amount of occupied habitat in the DPS would be reduced by nearly 20% (Figure F1-5).

Table F1-3. Miles of Occupied Stream Habitat within Watersheds of the South-Central California Coast Steelhead Distinct Population Segment

Watershed	Currently Occupied Habitat (miles)	Proportion of Occupied Habitat in the Distinct Population Segment
Salinas River	149	19%
Pajaro River	144	18%
Carmel River	92	11%
Big Sur	36	4%
Little Sur	15	2%
Small Coastal Streams	368	46%
Source: Adapted from National Marine Fisheries Service 2007		

F1.1.5 Population Status and Trends

F1.1.5.1 Population Trend

Distinct Population Segment

Limited available data on current steelhead abundance suggest the overall population in the SCCCS DPS is extremely small. Estimating the trend in population size is difficult because the run size for most watersheds is unknown and major impacts (i.e., dams) leading to subsequent declines occurred prior to most modern fish investigations in the SCCCS DPS. The sporadic and intermittent presence of steelhead in many watersheds in the SCCCS DPS further confounds assessment efforts. Nonetheless, investigations conducted since 1996 (Busby et al. 1996; Boughton et al. 2006) indicate that of the 39 watersheds that historically supported anadromous runs, virtually all continue to be occupied by native steelhead, though most of the populations are at historically low levels (National Marine Fisheries Service 2013).

Status reviews indicate that steelhead populations in the region have declined dramatically from about 27,000 fish estimated at the turn of the century (Busby 1996; Good et al. 2005; Williams et al. 2011). In the mid-1960s, California Department of Fish and Game (CDFG; California Department of Fish and Game 1965) estimated that the DPS-wide run size was about 17,750 adults. No recent estimates of the population have been made at the DPS scale; however, estimates for five river systems within the DPS (Pajaro, Salinas, Carmel, Little Sur, and Big Sur) indicate runs of fewer than 500 adults. Previous estimates of run sizes in those rivers had been on the order of 4,750 adults (California Department of Fish and Game 1965). Time-series data for the DPS only exist for the Carmel River, and indicate a decline of 22% per year from 1963 to 1993. More recent data from the Carmel River indicates that the abundance may have increased slightly, although it is difficult to determine whether this reflects population growth or a limited data set (Good et al. 2005).

The recovery plan for the SCCCS DPS estimated the recovery potential of the population to be low based on (1) a small number of extant populations vulnerable to extirpation due to loss of accessibility to freshwater spawning and rearing habitat; (2) low abundance; (3) degraded estuarine habitats; and (4) altered watershed processes essential to maintain freshwater habitats (National Marine Fisheries Service 2013). Threats are expected to be of a moderate magnitude in smaller watersheds, with a higher risk in larger watersheds with major water supply and flood control facilities such as the Salinas River. Future conflict is expected due to existing and anticipated future development, habitat degradation, and conflict with land development and associated flood control activities and water supplies.

Study Area

Estimates of steelhead abundance within the Salinas River watershed are limited, with no data available for recent years. However, impacts on critical habitat in the watershed have been accompanied by a progressive decline in steelhead abundance, notably in the tributaries (i.e., San Antonio and Nacimiento Rivers) and mainstem of the upper Salinas River. Specific estimates of the steelhead decline have not been well documented, but several infrequent estimates exist. The U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) estimated an average run size of 900 fish in 1951. In 1983, the population was estimated to be fewer than 500 adults (National Marine Fisheries Service 2007) with numerous observations of steelhead distributed throughout the headwaters of the upper basin, the major tributaries draining the western side of the Salinas Valley, and in Gabilan Creek (Titus et al. 2002).

More recent data indicate that the steelhead population in the Salinas River watershed is consistently declining due to low survivorship across multiple life stages. These conditions were likely exacerbated by the recent drought that occurred from 2012 to 2016. The population may be currently supported by both resident fish and those straying from other watersheds (National Marine Fisheries Service 2007).

Adult escapement monitoring in the lower Salinas River has revealed a modest population of steelhead returning each year. Since 2011, between 0 and 43 fish have returned each year, although sampling did not cover the entire migration window (FISHBIO in prep). Migration timing of steelhead was highly variable from year to year, occurring as early as the first half of December and as late as the end of March. Typically, adult migration coincided with or occurred after periods of increased flow, and only in years the lagoon was connected to the ocean.

In the biological opinion for the Salinas Valley Water Project (SVWP; National Marine Fisheries Service 2007), NMFS concluded that the Salinas River run of steelhead had likely declined to approximately 50 adult fish per year (EDAW 2001; National Marine Fisheries Service 2007). They concluded that the population was at risk due to the low abundance of each subpopulation and the fact that small populations have a greater risk of extinction due to genetic bottlenecking and environmental stochasticity (e.g., drought, disease, wildfire; Gilpin and Soule 1986; Pimm et al. 1988; McElhany et al. 2000).

F1.1.6 Threats

The populations of steelhead in the study area face numerous threats and stressors, most of which come from anthropogenic sources. Stressors, as defined by NMFS (2007), are physical, chemical, or biological conditions that limit the production of steelhead within the range of the species. Common threats to steelhead statewide include water degradation, lack of cold water, and low and variable stream flows due to logging, road construction, land use practices, and urbanization, as well as constricted habitat, reduced habitat suitability, and food web alteration (Moyle 1995). In the Salinas River watershed, lack of flows, barriers to migration, high water temperatures, and degraded habitat are among the biggest threats facing the species (National Marine Fisheries Service 2013).

Several threats to Salinas River watershed steelhead have been identified by NMFS (2013) based upon the leading stressors affecting properly functioning conditions of critical habitat in the watershed (Table F1-4). The sources of these stressors have also been identified (Table F1-5), based on methodology detailed in NMFS (71 FR 833–862). Flow-related passage issues appear to be among the leading stressors in the watershed, as evidenced by impaired migration between the ocean and estuary and upstream spawning and rearing habitats. A variety of sources are responsible for this impairment including groundwater pumping, surface water diversions, and dams associated with agricultural and urban developments. Although reaches of the Salinas River historically went dry during portions of the year, water use in the watershed has severely exacerbated these issues, leading to impairment of upstream migration of adult steelhead and downstream migration of juveniles during the majority of the year. In addition, changes in channel configuration from channelization and gravel mining, loss of riparian habitat, and agricultural encroachment into the floodplain has also affected surface flows.

Table F1-4. Sources of Threats to the Salinas River Watershed Subpopulations of the South-Central California Coast Steelhead Distinct Population Segment

	Top Stressors			
Subpopulation	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**
Arroyo Seco	Flow-related passage	Barriers	Summer Base flow	None
San Antonio/Nacimiento	Barriers	Competition	None	None
Upper Salinas	Summer base flow, flow-related passage	Summer base flow, flow-related passage	Water temperature	Barriers
Lower Salinas	Flow-related passage	Degraded estuarine habitat	Toxic contamination	Channelization

Source: Adapted from National Marine Fisheries Service 2013.

Table F1-5. Sources of Threats to the Salinas River Watershed Subpopulations of the South-Central California Coast Steelhead Distinct Population Segment

	Sources			
Subpopulation	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**
Arroyo Seco	Salinas River flows	Gravel mining, water diversions, and road crossings	Groundwater and surface diversions	None
San Antonio/ Nacimiento	Large dams	Introduced trout	None	None
Upper Salinas	Groundwater and surface diversions	Large dams	Groundwater and surface diversions and grazing	Dams, roads
Lower Salinas	Dams, groundwater and surface diversions	Dams, diversion, and flood control	Agriculture and urbanization	Agriculture and urbanization

Source: Adapted from National Marine Fisheries Service 2013.

Subpopulations of steelhead occupying the Salinas watershed show a strong pattern of flow-related passage issues and reduced summer base-flows as primary stressors to the populations. This suggests that all life stages of steelhead are impaired by these stressors in the watershed. Reduced base flows and flow-related passage impair the quality of freshwater rearing habitat by reducing the amount of available rearing space, exacerbating high temperatures, and otherwise reducing the survival of steelhead fry, parr, and pre-smolts. Sources of these threats are the same as those affecting migration by lowering of groundwater levels (i.e., groundwater pumping, surface water diversions, and dams associated with agricultural and urban developments).

Threats common to all subpopulations of steelhead in the SCCCS DPS are discussed below.

F1.1.6.1 Anthropogenic Influences

One of the major causes of the decline of steelhead in the Salinas River watershed is the decrease in quality and function of critical habitat. Habitat destruction and fragmentation have been linked to increased rates of species extinction (Davies et al. 2001), and in the SCCCS DPS, steelhead have declined as a result of habitat degradation resulting from water diversions, large dams, agricultural practices, urbanization, loss of wetland and riparian zones, roads, grazing, gravel mining, and logging. Water storage, withdrawal, conveyance, and diversions for agriculture, flood control, domestic, and hydropower purposes have greatly reduced or eliminated historically accessible steelhead habitat. Modification of natural flow regimes by dams and other water-control structures have resulted in increased water temperatures, changes in fish community structures, depleted flows during migration, spawning, rearing, flushing of sediments from spawning gravels, and reduced gravel recruitment. While different factors have had varying levels of influence, the general trend has been one of increasing pressure on aquatic resources, particularly in the lower reaches of the watershed. In addition, this degradation of critical habitat has exacerbated the adverse effects of natural environmental variability such as drought, poor ocean conditions, and predation.

Land-use activities associated with urban development, mining, agriculture, ranching, and recreation have significantly altered steelhead habitat quantity and quality. Associated impacts of these activities include alteration of stream bank and channel morphology; alteration of ambient stream water temperatures; degradation of water quality; elimination of spawning and rearing habitats; fragmentation of available habitats; elimination of downstream recruitment of spawning gravels and large woody debris; removal of riparian vegetation resulting in increased stream bank erosion; and increased fine sedimentation input into spawning and rearing areas. The net effect of these activities is the loss of channel complexity, pool habitat, suitable gravel substrate, and large woody debris, all of which are critical for steelhead production.

A significant percentage of estuarine habitats have been lost, particularly in the northern and southern portions of the DPS, where the majority of the wetland habitat historically occurred. The condition of remaining wetland habitats is in many cases highly degraded, with many wetland areas at continued risk of loss or further degradation (National Marine Fisheries Service 2013). Although numerous historically harmful practices have been halted, much of the historical damage remains to be addressed, and any restoration activities will require a significant amount of time to complete.

Water Use

Natural hydrological cycles in the Salinas River watershed have been altered by depletion and storage of natural flows, particularly within larger streams in the upper Salinas watershed that provide habitat to the SCCCS DPS. Dams, surface water diversions, and groundwater extraction are common across the Salinas River watershed. Loss of surface flows through the operation of dams or surface water diversions has increased juvenile steelhead mortality due to impaired migration from insufficient flows or habitat blockages, loss of rearing habitat due to dewatering and blockage, stranding of fish resulting from rapid flow fluctuations, entrainment of juveniles into unscreened diversions, and increased water temperatures (Bergren and Filardo 1993). Dams also negatively affect the hydrology, sediment transport processes, and geomorphology of the affected drainages. In addition, dams and reservoirs often provide opportunities for recreational fishing and can lead to the introduction nonnative predators and/or competitors (e.g., largemouth and smallmouth bass, carp, crayfish, western mosquitofish).

Re-establishing surface flows and/or maintaining hydrologic connections and physical access between the ocean and upper watersheds would expand access to historically important spawning and rearing habitats, which is essential to recovery of the Salinas River watershed subpopulation. Increased surface flows would improve the overall habitat conditions (amount and complexity) for steelhead, as well as the existing populations of native residualized steelhead that currently are isolated above dams and reservoirs.

Land Use Practices

Human population density is high in the Salinas River watershed, with substantial agricultural development occurring along the mainstem of the Salinas River and tributaries, which can magnify potential impacts on steelhead even though most of the watershed remains undeveloped. Agricultural development on lower floodplains has resulted in channelization, removal of riparian vegetation, and simplification of channel structure and function, as well as the elevation of fine sediments, pesticides and fertilizers, which can lead to elevate nutrient levels and increase biological oxygen demand. Public ownership of lands in the study area (U.S. National Forest and Bureau of Land Management (BLM) lands, military bases, etc.) can be extensive, although these public lands are generally concentrated in the upper watersheds (Hunt & Associates 2008).

Flood Control, Levees, and Channelization

Extensive channelization has occurred along the lower Salinas River, which has been realigned, resulting in loss or degradation of the riparian corridor and streambed (National Marine Fisheries Service 2008; Hunt & Associates 2008). Flood-control practices and subsequent channelization of streams and development of levees can impair the function and quality of stream habitats (National Marine Fisheries Service 1996; Brown et al. 2005; Jeffres et al. 2008). Habitat impairments in the Salinas River watershed may have resulted in several detrimental habitat features for steelhead including increased water temperature, incision of the streambed and loss of structural complexity and instream refugia (meanders, pools, undercut banks, etc.), loss of bed and bank habitat, increased sedimentation, turbidity, and substrate embeddedness, and excessive nutrient loading (Newcombe and Jensen 1996; Newcombe 2003; Naiman et al. 2005; Jeffres et al. 2008; Richardson et al. 2010).

Estuarine Loss

The Salinas River Lagoon is used by steelhead as rearing areas for juvenile steelhead as well as a staging area for smolts acclimating to saline conditions in preparation for entering the ocean and adults acclimating to freshwater in preparation for upstream migration and spawning (National Marine Fisheries Service 2008). Located at the downstream end of the watershed, it has been subjected to numerous threats, which have adversely affected the estuarine function in a variety of ways (e.g., degradation of water quality, modification of hydrologic patterns, changes in species composition). Approximately 10% of the historical estuary habitat remains in the Salinas River due to land use conversion resulting in filling, diking, and draining the lagoon. In addition, the habitat complexity and ecological functions of the estuary have been substantially reduced as a result of the loss of shallow-water habitats such as tidal channels, degradation of water quality through both point and non-point waste discharges, and artificial breaching of the seasonal sandbar at the mouth of the river, which can reduce and degrade steelhead rearing habitat by reducing water depths and the surface area of estuarine habitat.

Fishing Harvest

Despite a dearth of good historical accounts of the amount of steelhead harvested along the California coast (Jensen and Swartzell 1967), Shapovalov and Taft (1954) found that very few steelhead were caught by commercial salmon trollers at sea but considerable numbers were taken by sports anglers in Monterey Bay. Anecdotal reports of recreational fishing and poaching of adult steelhead further up in the watershed (Franklin 1999) suggests a relatively high level of historical fishing pressure.

Currently, despite the listing of the SCCCS DPS as threatened under the ESA, recreational angling for steelhead continues to be permitted in nearly all coastal drainages in south-central California including areas above currently impassible barriers. NMFS has previously concluded that recreational harvest is a limiting factor for SCCCS (Busby et al. 1996; Good et al. 2005), and angling in anadromous portions of coastal rivers and streams has been somewhat restricted through modification of the California Department of Fish and Wildlife's (CDFW's) angling regulations.

Artificial Propagation

Releasing large numbers of hatchery fish can pose a threat to steelhead populations through genetic impacts, competition for food and other resources, predation of hatchery fish on wild fish, and increased fishing pressure on wild stocks as a result of hatchery production (Waples 1991). The genetic impacts of artificial propagation programs are primarily caused though hybridization of hatchery and wild fish, which can reduce the genetic integrity and diversity that protect against changes in the environment. Steelhead in the Salinas River may be of "mixed genetic origin" due to the stocking of steelhead by the Monterey Bay Salmon and Steelhead Trout Project (Becker et al. 2010). Hatchery steelhead have also been introduced into the Salinas River watershed above the Nacimiento and San Antonio dams for recreational angling (National Marine Fisheries Service 2013). Stocking of nonnative steelhead in anadromous reaches of the Nacimiento River has also occurred until recently. Currently, CDFW limits stocking to non-anadromous waters using triploid rainbow trout (California Department of Fish and Wildlife and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2010). In spite of previous stocking practices, genetic testing of SCCCS has not detected substantial interbreeding between naturally spawned steelhead and hatchery reared steelhead (Girman and Garza 2006; Clemento et al. 2009; Abadia-Cardoso et al. 2011; Christie et al. 2011).

F1.1.6.2 Environmental Influences

Climate Change

Global warming has been scientifically validated as an anthropogenically driven phenomenon by the United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change, the Intergovernmental Panel on Climate

Change, and others (United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change 2006), and is expected to result in the warming of the atmosphere from increased greenhouse gas emissions. These changes will affect physical, chemical, ecological, and biological processes throughout the oceans, the biosphere, and the world's water cycle. Changes in the distribution and abundance of a wide array of biota suggest that the current warming trend has great potential to affect species' distribution and survival (Davies et al. 2001; Schneider and Root 2002), with the population extinction rate increasing in proportion to the magnitude of climate fluctuations (Good et al. 2005). In California, it is expected that there will be a predicted increase in critically dry years (Cayan et al. 2006), which will lead to a lack of surface flow in streams. Future climate change may therefore substantially increase risk to the species by exacerbating dry conditions. More information on climate change effects on steelhead is available in Section 3.5.9.

Ocean Conditions

Variability in marine environmental factors has been shown to substantially affect North Pacific salmon production (Beamish and Bouillion 1993; Beamish et al. 1997). For example, El Niño conditions, which occur every 3–5 years, negatively affect ocean productivity (Beamish et al. 1997). Prolonged periods of poor marine survival can affect the viability of populations, as was evidenced by the salmon fishery collapse during 2008–2009 (Lindley et al. 2009). Steelhead populations have persisted through these poor ocean periods, although these historically occurred under better habitat conditions. It is less certain how the SCCCS DPS will fare in periods of poor ocean survival when their freshwater, estuary, and nearshore marine habitats are degraded (Good et al. 2005).

Disease

Infectious disease is one of many factors that can influence adult and juvenile steelhead survival. Specific diseases such as *Ceratomyxosis*, *Columnaris*, *Furunculosis*, bacterial kidney disease, infectious hematopoietic necrosis virus, redmouth and black spot disease, erythrocytic inclusion body syndrome, and whirling disease, among others, are present in the SCCCS DPS and are known to affect steelhead. Very little current or historical information exists for steelhead to quantify changes in infection levels and mortality rates over time. In many cases, warm water temperatures, which are expected to occur more frequently in the Salinas River watershed, can contribute to the spread of infectious disease. However, studies have shown that native fish tend to be less susceptible to pathogens than hatchery cultured and reared fish (Buchanan et al. 1983).

Predation

Introductions of nonnative aquatic species (including fishes and amphibians) and habitat modifications (e.g., dams and impoundments, altered flow regimes, etc.) have resulted in increased predator populations in numerous river systems, thereby increasing the level of predation experienced by native salmonids (Busby et al. 1996). Nonnative species, particularly fishes and amphibians such as largemouth and smallmouth bass (*Micropterus* spp.) and bullfrogs (*Lithobates catesbeianus*) have been introduced and spread widely. These species can prey upon rearing juvenile steelhead (and their conspecific resident forms), compete for living space, cover, and food, and act as vectors for nonnative diseases (Cucherousset and Olden 2011).

Artificially induced summer low-flow conditions may also benefit nonnative species, exacerbate spread of diseases, and permit increased predation. NMFS (2013) concluded that the information available on these impacts on steelhead did not suggest that the DPS was in danger of extinction, or likely to become so in the foreseeable future, because of predation. However, small populations such as SCCCS can be more vulnerable to extinction through the synergistic effects of other threats, and the role of predation may be heightened under conditions of periodic low flows or high temperatures characteristic of the SCCCS DPS habitats.

Predation by marine mammals is not believed to be a major factor contributing to the decline of steelhead on the West Coast relative to other factors. However, both harbor seals (*Phoca vitulina*) and California sea lions (*Zalophus californianus*) are present within Monterey Bay, and populations of both cetaceans have increased along the Pacific Coast (National Marine Fisheries Service 1999). Previous studies (Hanson 1993) have shown that the foraging behavior of California sea lions and harbor seals with respect to anadromous salmonids was minimal, and that predation on salmonids appeared to be coincidental with the salmonid migrations rather than dependent upon them. Nevertheless, this type of predation is worth noting as it may have substantial impacts in localized areas (e.g., below a dam), although there is no evidence of this in the Salinas watershed.

Collectively, all of the factors listed above have severely degraded steelhead migration, spawning, and rearing habitat in the Salinas River watershed and are largely responsible for the decline of steelhead in the watershed. Steelhead migration habitat has been degraded by dams and their operations, which preclude access to spawning and rearing habitats and limit stream flows. Flood-control efforts have scoured the mainstem and reduced resting and hiding cover, while also contributing to reduced migration opportunities at low flows. Spawning and rearing habitat has been degraded by dam operations that reduce the amount of habitat space available and/or may disrupt redds. Lagoon management has created conditions in which few steelhead can successfully rear in the Salinas River Lagoon. Agriculture contributes pollutants (including nutrients and toxic contaminants), reduces dissolved oxygen levels, and increases temperatures to the lower river and Salinas River Lagoon. Fish planting may have degraded the genetic viability of wild steelhead. Many of these conditions are expected to continue, and possibly get worse, in the future.

F1.1.7 Recovery Planning

F1.1.7.1 State

The ESA mandates that the NMFS develop and implement recovery plans for the conservation (recovery) of listed species. Recovery plans are available for all DPS's of steelhead in California (except Northern California Steelhead) including the California Central Valley DPS (National Marine Fisheries Service 2014), Central California Coast DPS (National Marine Fisheries Service 2016), SCCCS DPS (National Marine Fisheries Service 2013), and Southern California DPS (National Marine Fisheries Service 2012).

NMFS issued a recovery plan for SCCCS in 2013 with the goal of preventing extinction in the wild and ensuring the long-term persistence of viable, self-sustaining populations of steelhead distributed across the DPS. The SCCCS recovery planning area includes those portions of coastal watersheds that are seasonally accessible to anadromous steelhead entering from the ocean, as well as the upper portions of watersheds above anthropogenic fish passage barriers that have historically contributed to the maintenance of anadromous populations (National Marine Fisheries Service 2013). Based in large part on Boughton et al. (2006), NMFS has divided 39 watersheds in which SCCCS have occurred historically into 4 biogeographic population groups (BPGs): Interior Coast Range, Carmel Basin, Big Sur Coast, and San Luis Obispo Terrace. The Interior Coast Range

BPG includes 5 populations of steelhead based on genetic and distributional information that largely correspond to one population per watershed (Boughton et al. 2006).

F1.1.7.2 Study Area

The development and implementation of the recovery plan for the SCCCS DPS is considered vital to the continued persistence and recovery of anadromous steelhead in the Salinas River. The Salinas River recovery planning area includes those portions of the watershed that are seasonally accessible to anadromous steelhead entering from the ocean, as well as the upper portions of watershed above anthropogenic fish passage barriers that historically contributed to the maintenance of anadromous populations. Implementation of the recovery plan will require the continued development of site-specific and project-specific information and involvement of interested stakeholders to ensure that recovery actions are effective and sustainable.

Recovery plans developed under the ESA are guidance documents, not mandatory regulatory documents. However, the ESA envisions recovery plans as the central organizing tool for guiding the recovery of listed species. The SCCCS recovery plan serves as a guideline for achieving recovery goals by describing the criteria by which NMFS would measure species recovery, the strategy to achieve recovery, and the recommended recovery actions necessary to achieve viable populations of steelhead within the SCCCS recovery planning area. Recovery does not necessarily require restoring watersheds to a pre-development, pristine state, but restoring riverine functions to the point that they support viable populations of wild steelhead.

The LTMP includes the Interior Coast Range BPG. The Salinas River watershed's larger size has allowed sufficient geographic isolation among populations of SCCCS to maintain multiple populations (Boughton et al. 2006). Within the Salinas River watershed, steelhead form three distinct populations in Gabilan Creek, Arroyo Seco, and upper Salinas River, which includes the Nacimiento and San Antonio Rivers (Boughton et al. 2006). For recovery planning, all populations within the Salinas River watershed have been designated as Core 1 populations. The Core 1 classification signifies highest priority populations for recovery based on the (1) intrinsic potential of the population in unimpaired conditions, (2) role of the population in meeting spatial and/or redundancy viability criteria, (3) severity of the threats facing the population, and (4) capacity of the watershed and population to respond to critical recovery actions. Such a strategy aims to restore the natural selective regime under which steelhead evolved, which is key to the species' long-term survival. The proposed strategy looks for opportunities for sustainable water and land-use practices, restores river and estuary processes that naturally sustain steelhead habitats, provides diverse opportunities for steelhead within the natural range of ecological adaptability, sustains ecosystem services for humans by reinforcing natural capital and the self-maintenance of watersheds and river systems, and builds natural and societal adaptive capacity to deal with climate change.

Many complex and inter-related biological, economic, social, and technological issues must be addressed in order to recover anadromous steelhead in the Salinas River. Policy changes at the federal, state, and local levels will be necessary to implement many of the recovery actions identified in this recovery plan. For example, without substantial strides in water conservation, efficiency, and re-use throughout south-central California, flow conditions for anadromous salmonids will limit recovery. Similarly, recovery is unlikely without programs to restore properly functioning historic habitats, such as estuaries, and access to upstream spawning and rearing habitat, particularly above dams.

Extensive, high-quality habitat exists above a large number of passage barriers in the SCCCS river systems. These areas are currently not included within the SCCCS DPS as defined in the listing rule (71 FR 834). However, because these habitat areas constitute a majority of the prime steelhead spawning and rearing habitat within the species' historic range, they are identified as recovery actions. In addition, restoring flows, access to spawning and rearing habitats, and instream habitat conditions (including estuarine conditions) necessary to support steelhead are also principal recovery actions to restore the Salinas River subpopulation and will require continuing active management in a region with a large human population and extensively developed land uses.

Many of the recovery actions identified in the recovery plan address watershed-wide processes that are also the focus of other local, state and federal programs (e.g., wildfire regime, erosion and sedimentation, runoff and waste discharges), which will benefit a wide variety of native species (including federally listed species or species of special concern) by restoring natural ecosystem functions. Some of the listed species which co-occupy coastal watersheds with SCCCS include tidewater goby (*Eucyclogobius newberryi*), foothill yellow-legged frog (*Rana boylii*), California least tern (*Sternula antillarum browni*), California red-legged frog (*Rana draytonii*), western pond turtle (*Actinemys marmorata*), Arroyo toad (*Bufo californicus*), least Bell's vireo (*Vireo bellii pusillus*), and western snowy plover (*Charadrius nivosus;* U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2015). Additionally, Pacific lamprey (*Entosphenus tridentata*)—another anadromous fish species occupying south-central California watersheds and whose numbers have declined significantly—can also be expected to benefit from many of the recovery actions identified in the recovery plan.

In addition to benefiting natural communities in the Salinas River watershed, restoration of steelhead habitats will also provide substantial benefits for human communities. These include, but are not limited to, improving and protecting the water quality of important surface and groundwater supplies, reducing damage from periodic flooding resulting from floodplain development, and controlling invasive exotic animal and plant species that can threaten water supplies and increase flooding risks. Restoring and maintaining ecologically functional watersheds also enhances important human uses of aquatic habitats occupied by steelhead; these include activities such as outdoor recreation, environmental education, field-based research of both physical and biological processes of coastal watersheds, aesthetic benefits, and the preservation of tribal and cultural heritage values.

Although the recovery of SCCCS is expected to be a long process, the NMFS Technical Recovery Team (TRT) recommends certain actions that should be implemented as soon as possible to help facilitate the recovery process for the Salinas River steelhead (Table F1-6). These include identifying a set of core populations on which to focus recovery efforts, protecting extant parts of inland populations, identifying refugia habitats, protecting and restoring estuaries, and collecting population data (Boughton et al. 2007).

Table F1-6. Critical Recovery Actions for Core 1 Populations in the Interior Coast Range Biological Population Group of the South-Central California Coast Steelhead Distinct Population Segment

Population	Critical Recovery Actions
Salinas River	Develop and implement operating criteria to ensure the pattern and magnitude of groundwater extractions and water releases from Salinas Dam to provide the essential habitat functions to support the life history and habitat requirements of adult and juvenile steelhead. Physically modify all fish passage impediments, including the Salinas Dam, to allow steelhead natural rates of migration to upstream spawning and rearing habitats, and passage of smolts and kelts

Population	Critical Recovery Actions
	downstream to the estuary and ocean. Manage instream mining to minimize impacts to mitigation, spawning, and rearing habitat, and protect spawning and rearing habitat in major tributaries, including the Arroyo Seco. Identify, protect, and where necessary, restore estuarine rearing habitats, including management of artificial breaching of the sandbar at the river's mouth.
Arroyo Seco River	Develop and Implement operating criteria to ensure the pattern and magnitude of groundwater extractions from the Arroyo Seco and lower Salinas River provide the essential habitat functions to support the life history and habitat requirements of adult and juvenile steelhead. Physically modify fish passage impediments, including concrete road crossing and diversion structure to allow steelhead natural rates of migration to upstream spawning and rearing habitat, and passage of smolts and kelts downstream to the estuary and ocean.
San Antonio River	Develop and implement operating criteria to ensure the pattern and magnitude of groundwater extractions and water releases, including bypass flows around diversions and dams (e.g. San Antonio Dam), to provide the essential habitat functions to support the life history and habitat requirements of adult and juvenile steelhead. Physically modify San Antonio Dam to allow steelhead natural rates of migration to upstream spawning and rearing habitats, and passage of smolts and kelts downstream to the estuary and ocean.
Nacimiento River	Develop and implement operating criteria to ensure the pattern and magnitude of water extractions and water release, including bypass flows around diversions and dams (e.g. Nacimiento Dam) to provide the essential habitat functions to support the life history and habitat requirements of adult and juvenile steelhead. Physically modify Nacimiento Dam to allow steelhead natural rates of migration to upstream spawning and rearing habitats, and passage of smolts and kelts downstream to the estuary and ocean.

Source: National Marine Fisheries Service 2013

F1.1.8 Existing Conservation Actions in the Study Area

In April 2010, the Monterey County Water Resources Agency (MCWRA) began operation of the Salinas River Diversion Facility (SRDF) as part of the SVWP. Operation of the SRDF involves release of water from Nacimiento Reservoir or San Antonio Reservoir to the Salinas River throughout the irrigation season with impoundment and diversion at the SRDF located at about river mile 4.8 near the upper part of the Salinas River Lagoon. The purpose of the project is to provide surface water that can be used to diminish groundwater extraction and reduce the amount of salt water intrusion into the groundwater basin. Details on project operations can be found in Section 2.3.1.1, *Reservoirs*, under *Water Releases*.

Flows requirements for the SRDF influence water quality conditions in the lagoon during the dry season and likely improve water quality overall. Previous to implementation of the SVWP there was no requirement for provision of flow to the lagoon and there was generally no flow to the lagoon following the last storm events in the spring. Although this was likely consistent with natural river flow patterns before development of the Salinas Valley, dry season flows to the lagoon likely improve water quality conditions and help to maintain a hospitable rearing environment for steelhead in the lagoon.

Restoration of the steelhead resources of the Salinas River system depends largely on protecting habitat (i.e., managing land and water resource use) in the Arroyo Seco watershed, as this comprises the majority of high quality steelhead rearing and spawning habitat remaining in the basin. Effective restoration is also contingent on providing migration flows between the Arroyo Seco confluence with the Salinas River and the river mouth, and ensuring passage at barriers both within the Arroyo Seco watershed and in the lower Salinas River. The Monterey County Public Works Department removed a major fish passage barrier at the Thorne Road Crossing on the Arroyo Seco River in 2008, and The Nature Conservancy purchased a conservation easement on Los Vaqueros Ranch in the Arroyo Seco watershed in 2010, protecting 1,337 acres of land along 2 miles of the Arroyo Seco mainstem and a portion of Vaqueros Creek, a tributary to the Arroyo Seco.

Operation of the SVWP likely enhances fish passage opportunities into the Arroyo Seco due to flow requirements that improve connectivity during important migratory periods. Increased flow releases from the Nacimiento and San Antonio reservoirs improve upstream and downstream migration opportunities for steelhead. As part of the requirements of the biological opinion for the SVWP (National Marine Fisheries Service 2007), MCWRA conducts monitoring of steelhead smolt outmigration from March 15 to May 31 in the Arroyo Seco, Salinas, and Nacimiento Rivers. The SVWP Fish Habitat and Monitoring Program, is intended to (1) quantify the presence of the threatened steelhead trout in the lower Salinas River system (population monitoring), (2) monitor river flows to ensure adequate water for fish passage (migration monitoring), and (3) monitor water quality to determine habitat suitability (National Marine Fisheries Service 2003). Results of this monitoring have helped to elucidate key data gaps in the Salinas River. Reports on this monitoring can be found on MCWRA's website at: http://www.co.monterey.ca.us/government/government-links/water-resources-agency/programs/fish-monitoring#wra.

F1.1.9 Literature Cited

Abadia-Cardoso, A., A. J. Clemento, and J. C. Garza. 2011. Discovery and Characterization of Single-Nucleotide Polymorphisms in Steelhead/Rainbow Trout, *Oncorhynchus mykiss*. Molecular Ecology Resources 11:31–49.

Barnhart, R. 1986. Species Profiles: Life Histories and Environmental Requirements of Coastal Fishes and Invertebrates (Pacific Southwest)—Steelhead. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Biological Report No. 82. U.S. Army Corps of Engineers Technical Report. EL-82-421.

Beamish, R. J., C. M. Neville, and A. J. Cass. 1997. Production of Fraser River Sockeye Salmon (*Oncorhynchus nerka*) in Relation to Decadel-Scale Changes in the Climate and the Ocean. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 54:543–554.

Beamish, R. J., and D. R. Bouillion. 1993. Pacific Salmon Production Trends in Relation to Climate. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 50:1,002–1,016.

Becker, G. S., K. M. Smetak, and D. A. Asbury. 2010. Southern Steelhead Resources Evaluation: Identifying Promising Locations for Steelhead Restoration in Watersheds South of the Golden Gate. Cartography by D.A. Asbury. Center for Ecosystem Management and Restoration. Oakland, CA.

Bergren, T. J., and M. J. Filardo. 1993. An Analysis of Variable Influencing the Migration of Juvenile Salmonids in the Columbia River Basin. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 13:48–63.

Bjornn, T. C. and Reiser, D. W. 1991. Habitat Requirements of Salmonids in Streams. *American* Fisheries Society Special Publication 19(837):138.

Bjornn, T. C., 1971. Trout and Salmon Movements in Two Idaho Streams as Related to Temperature, Food, Stream Flow, Cover, and Population Density. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 100:423–438.

Boughton, D., H. Fish, J. Pope, and G. Holt. 2009. Spatial Patterning of Habitat for *Oncorhynchus mykiss* in a System of Intermittent and Perennial Stream. Ecology of Freshwater Fish 18:92–105.

Boughton, D., P. Adams, E. Anderson, C. Fusaro, E. Keller, E. Kelley, L. Lentsch, J. Neilsen, K. Perry, H. Regan, J. Smith, C. Swift, L. Thompson, and F. Watson. 2006. Steelhead of the South-Central/Southern California Coast: Population Characterization for Recovery Planning. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-SWFSC TM-394.

Boughton, D. A, P. B. Adams, E. Anderson, S. Fusaro, E. Keller, E. Kelley, L. Lentsch, J. Nielsen, K. Perry, H. Regan, J. Smith, C. Swift, L. Thompson, and F. Watson. 2007. Viability Criteria for Steelhead of the South-Central and Southern California Coast. NOAA Technical Memorandum NOAA-TM-NMFS-SWFSC-407. 33 p.

Brown, L. R., R. H. Gray, R. H. Hughes, and M. R. Meador (eds.). 2005. Effects of Urbanization on Stream Ecosystems. American Fisheries Society Symposium 47.

Buchanan, D. V., J. E. Sanders, J. L. Zinn, and J. L. Fryer. 1983. Relative Susceptibility of Four Strains of Summer Steelhead to Infection by Ceratomyxa shasta. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 112:541–543.

Bugert, R. M., T. C. Bjornn, and W. R. Meehan. 1991. Summer Habitat Use by Young Salmonids and Their Responses to Cover and Predators in a Small Southeast Alaska Stream. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 120:474–485.

Busby, P. B., T. C. Wainwright, G. Bryant, L. J. Lierheimer, R. S. Waples, F. W. Waknitz, and I. V. Lagomarsino. 1996. Status Review: West Coast Steelhead from Washington, Idaho, Oregon, and California. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-NWFSC TM-27.

California Department of Fish and Game. 1965. California Fish and Wildlife Plan. Volume III supporting data: part B, inventory salmon-steelhead and marine resources. California Department of Fish and Game, Sacramento, CA.

California Department of Fish and Game. 2001. Fishery Management Plan: [FMEP] South-Central California Coast Evolutionarily Significant Unit: Steelhead (29 June 2001 Draft). Central Coast Region.

California Department of Fish and Wildlife and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 2010. Final Hatchery and Stocking Program EIR/EIS. SCH #20008082025. Prepared by ICF Jones and Stokes.

Cayan, D., A. Luers, M. Hanemann, G. Franco, and B. Croes. 2006. Climate Change Scenarios for California: An Overview. California Energy Commission PIER working paper.

Christie, M. R., M. Marine, and M. S. Blouin. 2011. Who are the missing parents? Grandparentage Analysis Identifies Multiple Sources of Gene Flow into a Wild Population. Molecular Ecology 10:1–14.

Clemento, A. J., E. C. Anderson, D. Boughton, D. Girman, and J. C. Garza. 2009. Population Genetic Structure and Ancestry of *Oncorhynchus mykiss* Populations above and below Dams in South-Central California. Conservation Genetics 10:1,321–1,336.

Cucherousset, J. and Olden, J. D. 2011. Ecological Impacts of Nonnative Freshwater Fishes. Fisheries 36:215–230.

Davies, K. F., C. Gascon, and C. R. Margules. 2001. Habitat Fragmentation: Consequences, Management, and Future Research Priorities. Pages 81-98 in Soule, M.E. and G.H. Orians (eds.). Conservation Biology: Research Priorities for the Next Decade. Island Press, Washington D.C.

Davis, J. C. 1975. Minimal Dissolved Oxygen Requirements of Aquatic Life with Emphasis on Canadian Species: A Review. Journal of the Fisheries Board of Canada 32:2,295–2,332.

Denise Duffy and Associates. 2015. Pure Water Monterey Groundwater Replenishment Project Final Environmental Impact Report. Available: http://purewatermonterey.org/reports-docs/cfeir. Accessed: January 11, 2019.

Dettman, D. H. 1988. Reconnaissance of the Effect of a Salinas River Diversion Dam on Fish and Other Aquatic Resources. Prepared for the Monterey County Flood Control and Water Conservation District. D.W. Kelley and Associates, Newcastle, CA.

EDAW. 2001. Draft Environmental Impact Report/Environmental Impact Statement for the Salinas Valley Water Project. Prepared for Monterey County Water Resources Agency and the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers.

Everest, F. H. and Chapman, D. W. 1972. Habitat Selection and Spatial Interaction by Juvenile Chinook Salmon and Steelhead Trout in Two Idaho streams. Journal of the Fisheries Board of Canada 29:91–100.

FISHBIO (In prep). Salinas Basin *Oncorhynchus mykiss* Monitoring: Summary Report. Report to Monterey County Water Resources Agency. 40 pp.

Franklin, H. A. 1999. Steelhead Migrations in the Salinas River. Unpublished Oral History.

Garza, J. C., E. A. Gilbert-Horvath, B. C. Spence, T. H. Williams, H. Fish, S. A. Gough, J. H. Anderson, D. Hamm, and E. C. Anderson. 2014. Population Structure of Steelhead in Coastal California. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 143:134–152.

Gilpin, M. E. and M. E. Soulé. 1986. Minimum Viable Populations: Processes of Species Extinction. Pages 19–34 in M. E. Soulé (ed.). Conservation Biology: The Science of Scarcity and Diversity. Sinauer Associates, Massachusetts.

Girman, D. and J. Garza. 2006. Population Structure and Ancestry of O. mykiss Populations in South-Central California Based on Genetic Analysis of Microsatellite Data. Final Report. Prepared for California Department. Fish and Wildlife Project No. P0350021 and Pacific States Marine Fisheries Commission. Contribution No. AWIP-S-1.

Good, T. P., R. S. Waples, and P. Adams (eds.). 2005. Updated Status of Federally Listed ESUs of West Coast Salmon and Steelhead. National Marine Fisheries Service, Northwest and Southwest Fisheries Science Centers. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-NWFSC TM-66.

Hanson, L. C. 1993. The Foraging Ecology of Harbor Seals, Phoca vitulina, and California Sea Lions, Zalophus californianus, at the Mouth of the Russian River, California. Master's thesis. Sonoma State University, Rohnert Park, CA.

Hayes, S. A., M. H. Bond, C. V. Hanson, E. V. Freund, J. J., Smith, E. C. Anderson, A. J. Ammann, and R.B. MacFarlane, 2008. Steelhead Growth in a Small Central California Watershed: Upstream and Estuarine Rearing Patterns. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 137:114–128.

Healey, M. C. 1982. Juvenile Pacific Salmon in Estuaries: The Life Support System. In Estuarine Comparisons. Edited by V. S. Kennedy. Academic Press, New York, NY. pp. 315–342.

Hilborn, R., T. P. Quinn, D. E. Schindler, and D. E. Rogers. 2003. Biocomplexity and Fisheries Sustainability. Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA 100:6564–6568.

Hill, M. F., A. Hastings, and L. W. Botsford. 2002. The Effects of Small Dispersal Rates on Extinction Times in Structured Metapopulation Models. American Naturalist 160:389–402.

Hunt & Associates Biological Consulting Services. 2008. South-Central California Coast Steelhead Recovery Planning Area Conservation Action Planning (CAP) Workbooks Threats Assessment. Prepared for National Marine Fisheries Service, Southwest Region, Protected Resources Division.

Jeffres, C., J. Opperman, and P. Moyle. 2008. Ephemeral Floodplain Habitats Provide Best Growth Conditions for Juvenile Chinook Salmon in a California River. Environmental Biology of Fishes 83:449–458.

Jensen, P. T., and P. G. Swartzell. 1967. California Salmon Landings 1952 through 1965. California Department of Fish and Game. Fish Bulletin 135:1–57.

Keefer, M. L., and C. C. Caudill. 2012. A Review of Adult Salmon and Steelhead Straying with an Emphasis on Columbia River Populations [online]. Technical Report 2012-6. Department of Fish and Wildlife Resources, College of Natural Resources, University of Idaho.

Lindley, S. T., C. B. Grimes, M. S. Mohr, W. T. Peterson, J. E. Stein, J. J. Anderson, L. W. Botsford, D. L. Bottom, C. A. Busack, T. K. Collier, and J. W. Ferguson, 2009. What Caused the Sacramento River Fall Chinook Stock Collapse? U.S. Department of Commerce, National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration, National Marine Fisheries Service, Southwest Fisheries Science Center, Fisheries Ecology Division.

Matthews, K. R. and N. H. Berg. 1997. Rainbow Trout Responses to Water Temperature and Dissolved Oxygen Stress in Two Southern California Stream Pools. Journal of Fish Biology 50:50–67.

McElhany, P., M. H. Ruckelshaus, M. J. Ford, T. C. Wainwright, and E. P. Bjorkstedt. 2000. Viable Salmonid Populations and the Recovery of Evolutionarily Significant Units. NOAA Tech. Mem. NMFS-NWFSC-42.

McEwan, D. 2001. Central Valley Steelhead. In R. L. Brown, Contributions to the Biology of Central Valley Salmonids, Volume 1, pp. 1–44. California Department of Fish and Game. Fish Bulletin 179.

Meffe, G. K., C. R. Carroll (and contributors). 1997. Principles of Conservation Biology. Sinauer Associates, Inc.

Merz, J. E., Setka, J. D., Pasternack, G. B. and Wheaton, J. M. 2004. Predicting Benefits of Spawning-Habitat Rehabilitation to Salmonid (*Oncorhynchus* spp.) Fry Production in a Regulated California River. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 61:1,433–1,446.

Myrick, C. A. and J. J. Cech, Jr. 2004. Temperature Effects on Juvenile Anadromous Salmonids in California's Central Valley: What Don't We Know? Reviews in Fish Biology and Fisheries 14:113–123.

Naiman, R. J., H. Decamps, and M. E. McClain, 2005. Riparia: Ecology, Conservation, and Management of Streamside Communities. Elsevier/Academic Press.

National Marine Fisheries Service. 1996. Factors for Decline—A Supplement to the Notice of Determination for West Coast Steelhead Under the Endangered Species. Northwest and Southwest Regions, Protected Resources Divisions.

National Marine Fisheries Service. 1999. Impacts of California Sea Lions and Pacific Harbor Seals on Salmonids and West Coast Ecosystems. Report to Congress. Available from NMFS, Protected Resources Division, 777 Sonoma Avenue, Room 325, Santa Rosa, CA 95404.

National Marine Fisheries Service. 2003. Biological Opinion for the Regional General Permit for the Salinas River Channel Maintenance Program. Protected Resources Division of NMFS, Southwest Region. Administrative File Number 151422SWR02SR428, Long Beach, CA.

National Marine Fisheries Service. 2007. Biological Opinion for the Salinas River Diversion Facility. June. Southwest Region, Long Beach, CA.

National Marine Fisheries Service. 2008. Report to Congress: Pacific Coastal Salmon Recovery Fund FY 2000–2005. Office of Protected Resources.

National Marine Fisheries Service. 2012. Southern California Steelhead Recovery Plan. Southwest Region, Protected Resources Division, Long Beach, CA.

National Marine Fisheries Service. 2013. South-Central California Steelhead Recovery Plan. December. West Coast Region, Long Beach, CA.

National Marine Fisheries Service. 2016. 5-Year Review: Summary and Evaluation of South-Central California Coast Steelhead Distinct Population Segment. West Coast Region. California Coastal Office. Santa Rosa, CA.

Newcombe, C. P. 2003. Impact Assessment Model for Clear Water Fishes Exposed to Excessively Cloudy Water. American Water Resources Association. Water Resources Bulletin 35:529–544.

Newcombe, C. P. and J. Jensen. 1996. Channel Suspended Sediment and Fisheries: Synthesis for Quantitative Assessment of Risk and Impact. North American Journal of Fisheries Management 16:1–34.

Pimm, S. L., H. L. Jones, and J. Diamond. 1988. On the Risk of Extinction. American Naturalist 132:757–785.

Poletto, J. B., D. E. Cocherell, S.E. Baird, T.X. Nguyen, V. Cabrera-Stagno, A.P. Farrell, and N.A. Fangue. 2017. Unusual Aerobic Performance at High Temperatures in Juvenile Chinook Salmon, *Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*. Conservation Physiology 5:cow067. https://doi.org/10.1093/conphys/cow067.

Quiñones, R. M. and Mulligan, T. J., 2005. Habitat Use by Juvenile Salmonids in the Smith River Estuary, California. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 134:1,147–1,158.

Richardson, J. S., E. Taylor, D. Schluter, M. Pearson, and T. Hatfield. 2010. Do Riparian Zones Qualify as Critical Habitat for Endangered Freshwater Fishes? Canadian Journal of Fisheries Aquatic Science 67:1,197–1,204.

Satterthwaite, W. H., M. P. Beakes, E. M. Collins, D. R. Swank, J. E. Merz, R. G. Titus, S. M. Sogard, and M. Mangel. 2009. Steelhead Life History on California's Central Coast: Insights from a State-Dependent Model. Transactions of the American Fisheries Society 138:532–548.

Schneider, S. H., and T. L. Root (eds.). 2002. Wildlife Responses to Climate Change: North American Case Studies. Island Press, Washington D.C.

Scott, W. B. and E. J. Crossman. 1973. Freshwater Fishes of Canada. Fish. Res. Board Can. Bulletin 184.

Shapovalov, L. and A. C. Taft. 1954. The Life Histories of Steelhead Rainbow Trout (Salmo gairdneri) and Silver Salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*) with Special Reference to Waddell Creek, California and Recommendations Regarding their Management. California Department of Fish and Game. Bulletin 98.

Shirvell, C. S. 1990. Role of Instream Rootwads as Juvenile Coho Salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*) and Steelhead Trout (O. mykiss) Cover Habitat under Varying Streamflows. Canadian Journal of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 47:852–861.

Simenstad, C. A., K. L. Fresh, E. O. Salo. 1982. The Role of Puget Sound and Washington Coastal Estuaries in the Life History of Pacific Salmon: An Unappreciated Function. In: Kennedy, V.S. (ed.). Estuarine Comparisons. Academic Press, New York, NY, pp. 343–364.

Smith, G. R. and R. F. Stearley. 1989. The Classification and Scientific Names of Rainbow and Cutthroat Trouts. Fisheries (Bethesda) 14:4–10.

Snider, W. 1983. Reconnaissance of the Steelhead Resource of the Carmel River Drainage, Monterey County. Prepared for the California Department of Fish and Wildlife, Environmental Services Branch. Administrative Report No. 83-3.

Sutton, R. J., Deas, M. L., Tanaka, S. K., Soto, T. and Corum, R. A. 2007. Salmonid Observations at a Klamath River Thermal Refuge under Various Hydrological and Meteorological Conditions. River Research and Applications 23:775–785.

Thompson, L. C., J. L. Voss, R. E. Larsen, W. D. Tietje, R. A. Cooper, and P. D. Moyle. 2012. Southern Steelhead (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*), Hard Woody Debris, and Temperature in a California Central Coast Watershed. Transaction of the American Fisheries Society 141:275–284.

Titus, R. G., D. C. Erman, and W. M. Snider. 2002. History and Status of Steelhead in California Coastal Drainages South of San Francisco Bay. July 5. Draft.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 1997. Klamath River Life Stage Periodicities for Chinook, Coho, and Steelhead. Prepared for the U.S. Geological Survey. 63 pp.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 2015. Information for Planning and Conservation IPAC. Available at: https://ecos.fws.gov/ipac/.

United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change. 2006. Available: http://unfccc.int.

Verhille, C. E., English, K. K., Cocherell, D. E., Farrell, A. P. and Fangue, N. A. 2016. High Thermal Tolerance of a Rainbow Trout Population Near its Southern Range Limit Suggests Local Thermal Adjustment. Conservation Physiology 4: p.cow057. https://doi.org/10.1093/conphys/cow057

Waples, R. S. 1991. Pacific Salmon, *Oncorhynchus* spp., and the Definition of "Species" under the Endangered Species Act. Marine Fisheries Review 53:11–22.

Williams, T. H., S. T. Lindley, B. C. Spence, and D. Boughton. 2011. Status Review Update for Pacific Salmon and Steelhead Listed Under the Endangered Species Act: Southwest Region. National Marine Fisheries, Southwest Fisheries Science Center, Fisheries Ecology Division.

Zedonis, P. A. 1992. The Biology of the Juvenile Steelhead (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*) in the Mattole River Estuary/Lagoon, California. Doctoral dissertation. Humboldt State University.

Attachment F1

Figures

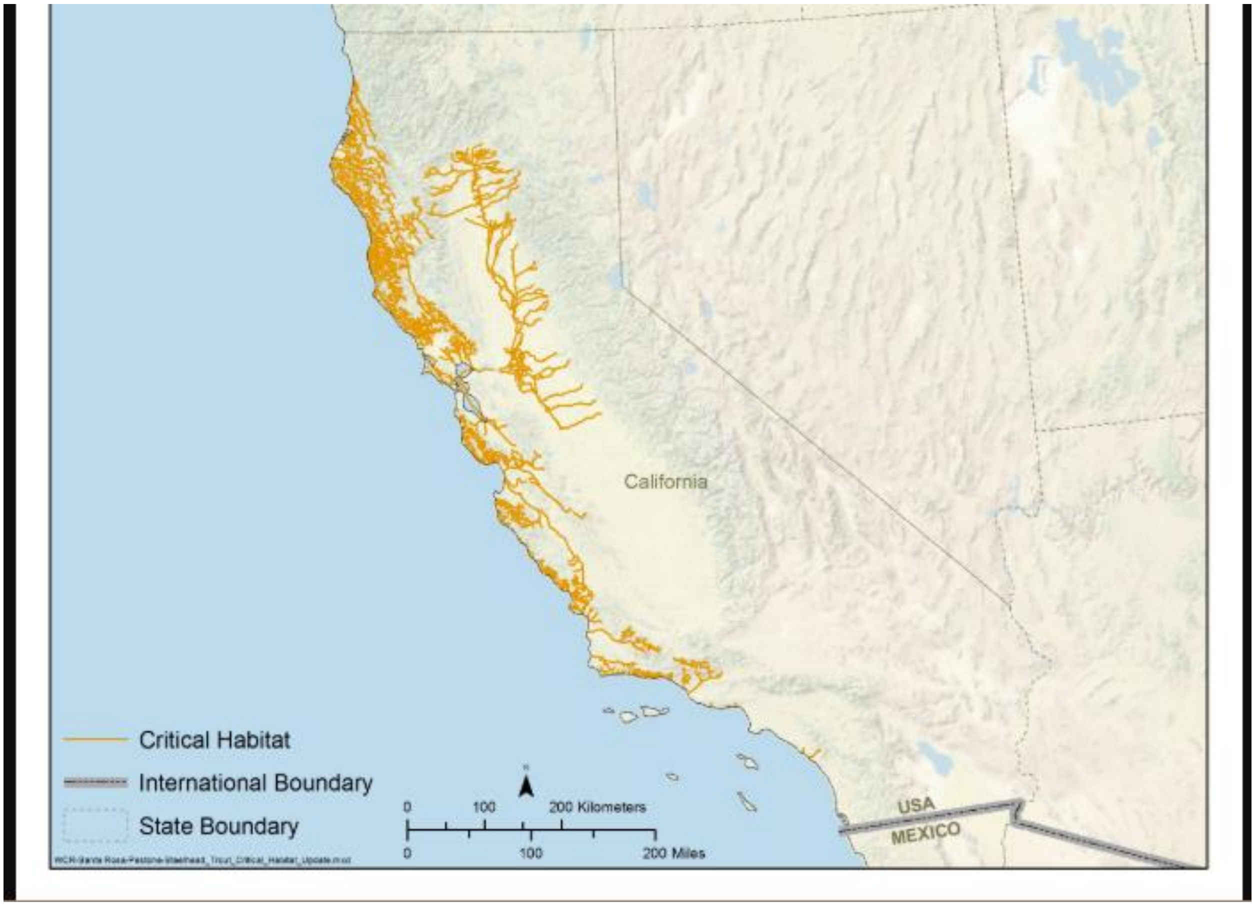

Figure F1-1. State-Wide Critical Habitat for Steelhead

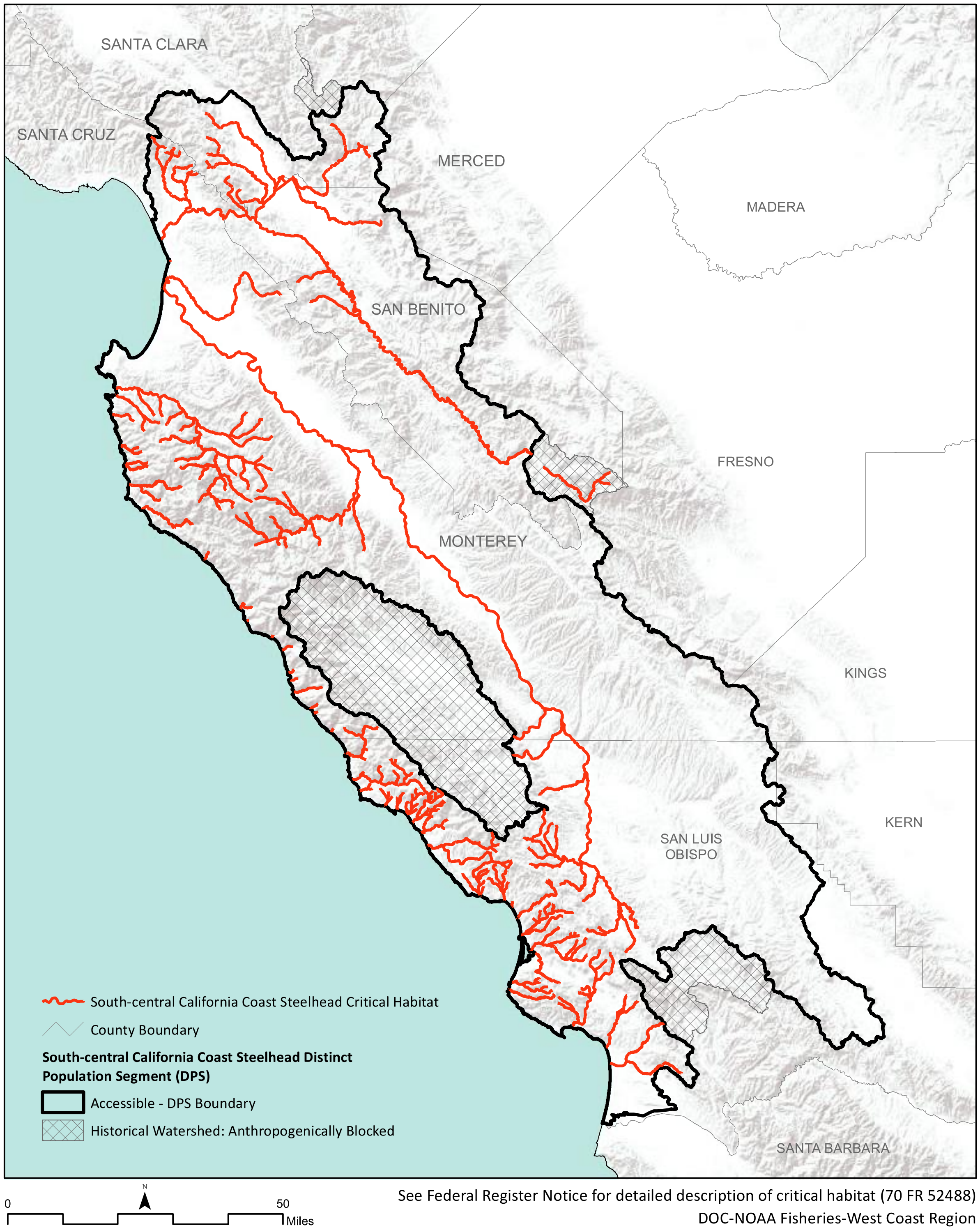

Figure F1-2. Critical Habitat for South-Central California Coast Steelhead

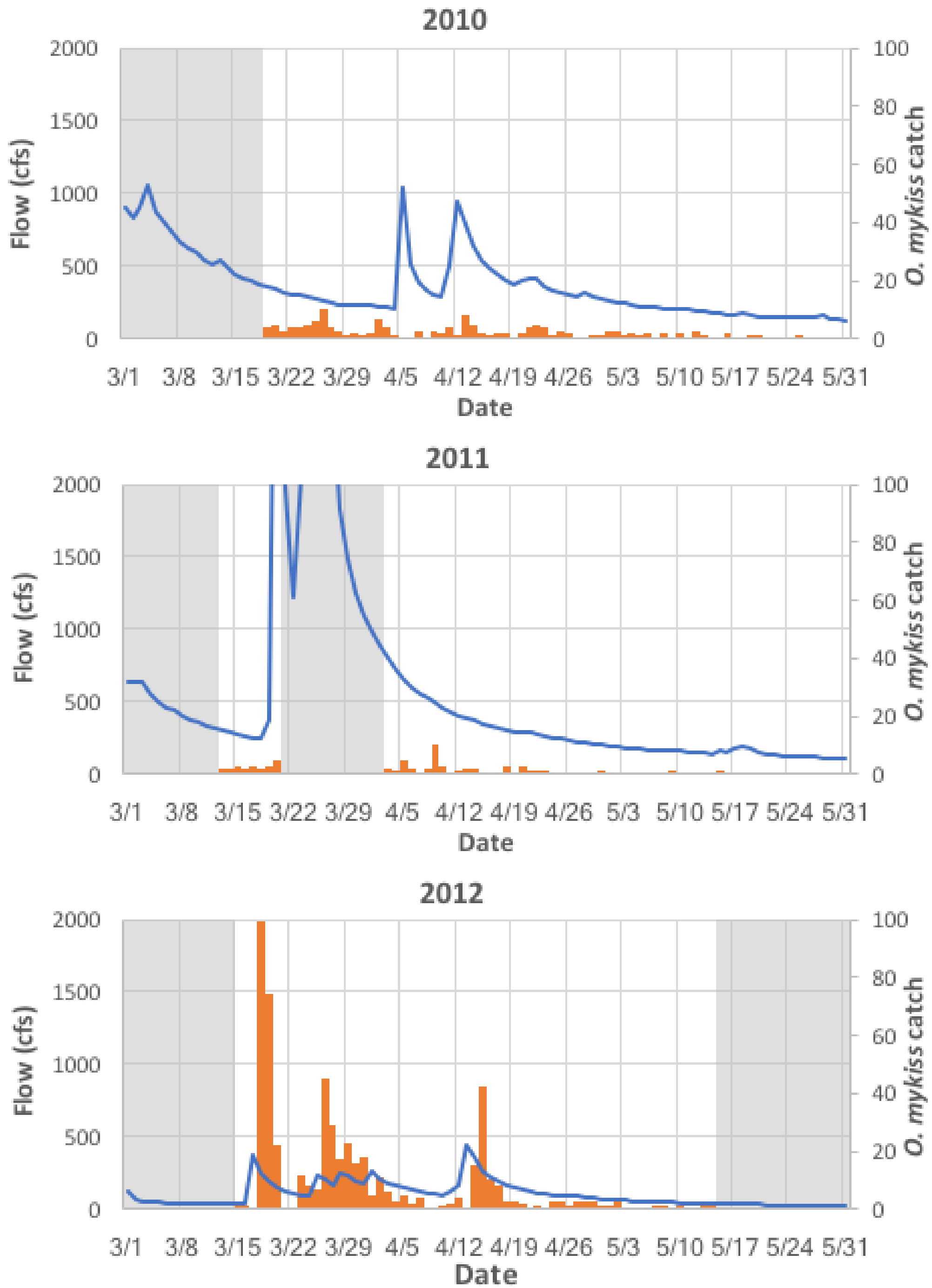

Figure F1-3. Rotary Screw Trap Catch of Steelhead (Orange Bars) Relative to Discharge (Blue Line) in Arroyo Seco in 2010, 2011, 2012. *Grey background indicates when the trap was not deployed.*

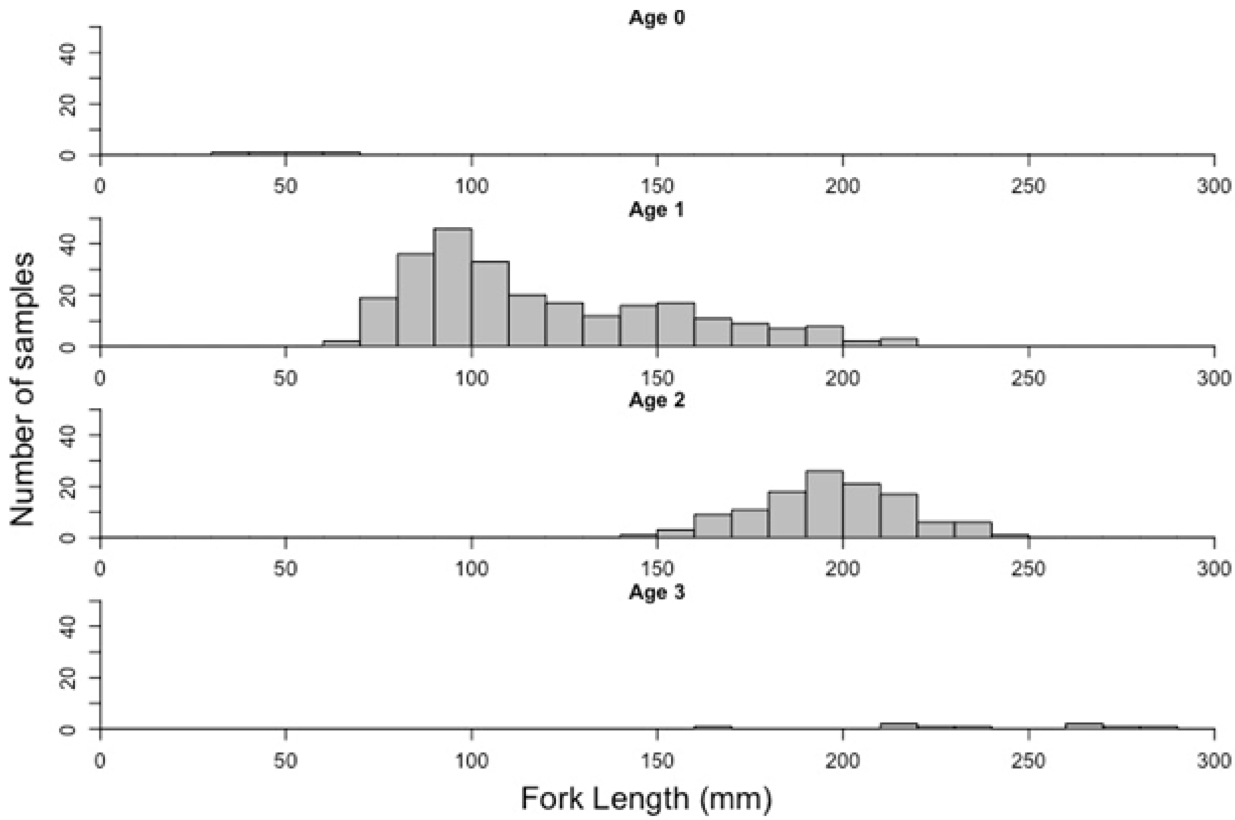

Figure F1-4. Length distribution of *O. mykiss* at different ages sampled at the Arroyo Seco River Rotary Screw Trap.

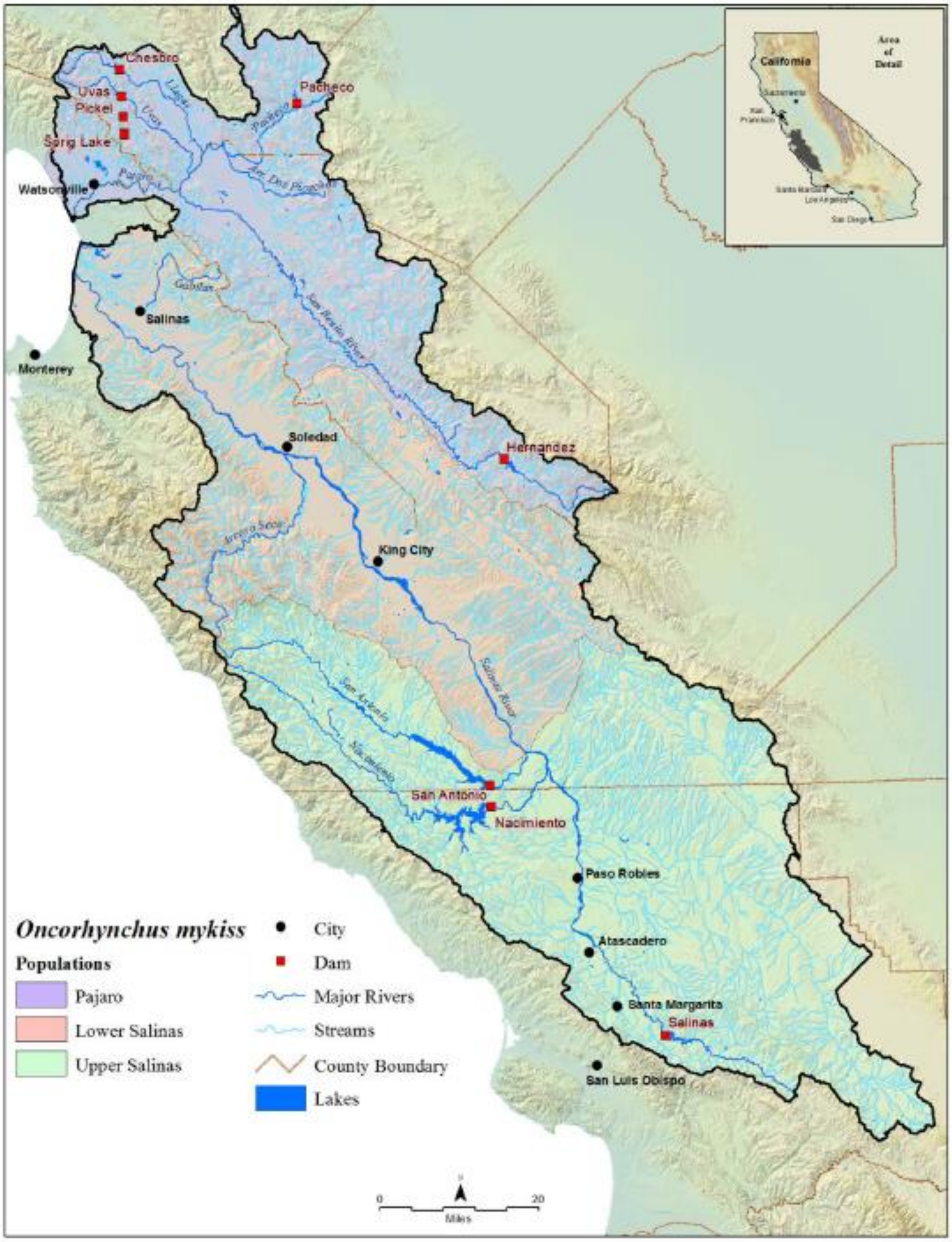

Figure F1-5. Steelhead Habitat in the Salinas and Pajaro River Watersheds

Appendix F2
Tidewater Goby Species Account

F2.1 Tidewater Goby (*Eucyclogobius newberryi)*

F2.1.1 Legal Status

F2.1.1.1 State

Tidewater goby is identified as a Species of Special Concern.

F2.1.1.2 Federal

Tidewater goby is listed as endangered under the ESA (59 FR 5494-5498), although it has since been proposed to reclassify tidewater goby as threatened (79 FR 14340–14362). Reasons for downlisting include (1) the number of localities known to be occupied has nearly tripled since listing (from 43 to 114), (2) the increase in occupied localities indicates that the tidewater goby is more resilient in the face of severe drought events than believed at the time of listing, and (3) threats identified at the time of listing have been reduced or are not as serious as previously thought.

F2.1.1.3 Critical Habitat

Critical habitat for tidewater goby was re-designated in 2013 to cover approximately 12,156 acres (4,920 hectares) of estuaries and lands in portions of Del Norte, Humboldt, Mendocino, Sonoma, Marin, San Mateo, Santa Cruz, Monterey, San Luis Obispo, Santa Barbara, Ventura, Los Angeles, Orange, and San Diego Counties, California (also see 78 FR 8745). This re-designation increased the amount of critical habitat for tidewater goby, which was previously based on a January 2008 ruling that designated 10,003 acres of critical habitat throughout the state of California.

The critical habitat designation in the study area for tidewater goby includes Bennett Slough (north of the study area) and the Salinas River (78 FR 8759; Figures F2-1a–1c).

F2.1.2 Taxonomy

Tidewater goby was first described as a new species by Girard (1856) as *Gobius newberryi*. Gill (1863) erected the genus *Eucyclogobius* for this distinctive species. The intraspecific phylogeny of tidewater goby is highly geographically structured. Crabtree's (1985) genetic work on tidewater goby shows fixed allelic differences at the extreme northern and southern ends of the range and some variation in central California. Each of these northern and southern populations is distinct from each other and from those central populations that have been sampled. The other more centrally distributed populations are relatively similar to one another. This study was based on 12 localities distributed over most of the range. The precise limits of allozyme differentiation are not known. The results of this study indicate that there is a very low level of gene flow between the populations sampled. Many of the populations may be diverging genetically from each other due to discrete, seasonally closed estuaries, where tidewater gobies have low dispersal ability (Crabtree 1985).

Dawson et al. (2001) analyzed mitochondrial DNA and cytochrome b sequences of individual tidewater gobies collected from 31 locations between 1990 and 1999. Their study revealed six major phylogeographic groups in four clusters—the San Diego clade south of Los Angeles and Point Buchon, a lone Estero Bay group from central California, and San Francisco and Cape Mendocino groups from northern California—that genetically vary. Barriers to gene flow likely exist in the vicinities of Los Angeles, Seacliff, Point Buchon, Big Sur, and Point Arena. Finer scale phylogeographic structure within these regions is suggested by genetic differences between estuaries but is poorly resolved by current analysis (Dawson et al. 2001). Dawson et al. (2001) found that phylogenetic relationships between and patterns of molecular diversity within the six groups are consistent with repeated and sometimes rapid northward and southward range expansions out of central California, likely caused by Quaternary climate change. The modern geographic and genetic structure of tidewater goby has probably also been influenced by patterns of expansion and contraction, colonization, extirpation, and gene flow linked to Pliocene-Pleistocene tectonism, Quaternary coastal geography and hydrography, and historical human activities (Dawson et al. 2001). The deepest phylogenetic gap in *Eucyclogobius* coincides with phylogeographic breaks in several other coastal California taxa in the vicinity of Los Angeles, suggesting common extrinsic factors have had similar effects on different species in this region. In contrast, evidence of gene flow exists across the biogeographic boundary at Point Conception (Dawson et al. 2001). Furthermore, the degree of morphological variation between the phylogeographical groups was examined in 833 museum specimens from 25 localities including samples from extirpated populations. The examination of these specimens for morphological differences support the six recovery units, which are based on phylogeographic analysis (Dawson et al. 2001) and on the variation of the head lateral line canals (Ahnelt et al. 2004).

F2.1.3 Distribution

F2.1.3.1 Statewide

Historical

The tidewater goby, a fish species endemic to California, is found primarily in waters of coastal lagoons, estuaries, and marshes. Tidewater historically ranged from Tillas Slough (mouth of the Smith River, Del Norte County) to Agua Hedionda Lagoon (northern San Diego County; Figure F2-2).

Recent

Tidewater gobies are currently found throughout their known historic range but occupy fewer locations than historically, having been extirpated from some sites as a result of drainage, water quality changes, introduced predators, and drought. Tidewater goby is thought to have occurred in as many as 124 different locations during recent decades, but it currently can be found in only about 96 of those historic locations, and only about 54 of those 124 populations are thought to be secure at this time. Tidewater gobies can recolonize habitats when favorable habitat conditions are restored and individuals repopulate this restored habitat, either through natural dispersal or through human-assisted reintroduction. Tidewater gobies are naturally absent from areas where the coastline is steep and streams do not form lagoons or estuaries. Several large natural gaps occur in the species' distribution from northern Sonoma County to Del Norte County, where steep rocky shorelines dominate the coastline, and salt marsh and stream estuaries do not naturally occur (78 FR 8746–8819).

F2.1.3.2 Study Area

Historical

Although tidewater goby was historically found in the Salinas River, it was last documented in the Salinas River Lagoon in 1951, until recent observations in 2013 and 2014 (Hagar Environmental Services 2014). Tidewater goby has also been found in Bennett Slough (northern end of Elkhorn Slough; U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2005). No information is available on the species' historical distribution within the lagoon.

Recent

In 2013, a few individuals were found while conducting routine lagoon monitoring, with both individuals observed along the sandbar at the northwestern edge of the lagoon. In 2014, tidewater goby was the second most abundant fish species after threespine stickleback. One of the individuals was captured at the mouth of the lagoon near the usual location of breaching, four of the individuals were captured along the sandbar at the northwestern edge of the lagoon, and 53 individuals were captured near the Highway 1 Bridge (Hagar Environmental Services 2014). A doctoral student with the University of California, Los Angeles, conducted multiple surveys in the Salinas River Lagoon and Old Salinas River beginning in 2014, and was able to document and collect tidewater gobies during each visit (B. Spies, pers. comm.). However, his collection information does not detail the number or sizes of tidewater gobies that were observed during each survey, but rather provides valuable information on population persistence (Hellmair et al. 2018).

Tidewater goby distribution surveys were conducted in October 2018. Tidewater gobies were found at each sampled location along the sandbar at/near the breach site and along the southwest shoreline of the lagoon until water depth precluded sampling (upstream from the wildlife refuge parking area; Hellmair et al. 2018). This finding contrasts with survey results from most previous years, when the distribution of tidewater goby appeared restricted to the lower lagoon (with exception of the year 2014, when the species was documented as far upstream as the Highway 1 bridge). Contrary to expectations, tidewater gobies were not found in the vicinity of the OSR slidegate. During past surveys, the species was regularly found in this area, and in the OSR in the vicinity of the Monterey Dunes Way road crossing. Although this location was not sampled in October 2018 due to permit restrictions, high tidewater goby densities were also expected in this area (B. Spies, pers. comm.).

Numbers of tidewater goby captured with each seine haul during the 2018 survey ranged from 0 (near OSR slidegate, OSR and Hwy 1 Bridge) to 3. At sampling sites where the species was detected, every seine haul captured at least one goby. Due to these low capture numbers, estimation of index densities is not biologically meaningful. However, despite low captured numbers in individual seine hauls, tidewater goby appeared to be widely distributed within the lagoon, suggesting that the species was abundant during this time (Hellmair et al. 2018).

F2.1.4 Natural History

F2.1.4.1 Habitat Requirements

The tidewater goby favors the stable conditions provided by estuarine environments subject to minimal tidal fluctuation; such conditions typically occur when lagoons are cut off from the ocean by beach sandbars. All life stages of the tidewater goby are typically found in areas of low to moderate salinity (commonly less than 12 parts per thousand [ppt]). However, tidewater gobies have been documented in waters with salinity levels from 0 to 42 ppt or higher (as a comparison, sea water is about 34 ppt). They are commonly found at temperatures from 8 to 25°C (46 to 77°F); Irwin and Soltz 1984; Swift et al. 1989; Worcester 1992). Recent information suggests that gobies have a wide tolerance for salinity, oxygenation, and temperature, especially over short time periods or seasonally.

Tidewater gobies are bottom dwellers and are typically found in lagoon margin habitat at water depths of less than 3 feet, although they can occur at water depths up to 15 feet in large lagoons. They typically inhabit areas of slow-moving water, avoiding strong wave action or currents. Particularly important to the persistence of the species in lagoons is the presence of backwater, marshy habitats, which provide refuge habitat during winter flood flows. Tidewater gobies prefer a sandy substrate for breeding, but they can be found on rocky, mud, and silt substrates as well. Optimal lagoon habitats are shallow, sandy-bottomed areas, surrounded by beds of emergent vegetation. Open areas are critical for breeding, while vegetation is critical for overwintering survival (providing refuge from high flows) and probably for feeding. Tidewater goby often show a close association with widgeon grass (ruppia). Tidewater goby appears to spend all life stages in lagoons, estuaries, and river mouths, although it has been documented in slack freshwater habitats as far as 5 miles upstream from San Antonio Lagoon in Santa Barbara County (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2005.

Tidewater goby habitat is subject to fluctuation of physical conditions on a seasonal basis, and estuarine processes can facilitate dispersal of subpopulations. Tidewater gobies may enter marine environments only when flushed out of lagoons, estuaries, and river mouths by normal breaching of the sandbars following storm events. However, these may be natural mechanisms of dispersal between suitable habitats on a local basis, where conditions are favorable to retain a sufficiently robust breeding population in the natal site. Gobies are unlikely to persist where daily tidal fluctuations cause substantial portions of the breeding population to be flushed from natal sites on a regular basis, or where tidal fluctuations cause breeding substrates to be dewatered.

USFWS (2005) has identified several criteria for lagoon conditions that favor tidewater gobies. These include little or no channelization, lagoon closure to the ocean for much of the year (i.e., tidal fluctuation is absent or minimal), fresh unconsolidated sand (optimal for reproduction), and high-quality inflowing water to increase the habitable area of a lagoon in summer. Nutrient-rich inflow (e.g., agricultural or urban runoff) is undesirable and can cause algal blooms, deplete oxygen, and lead to hydrogen sulfide formation. Additionally, presence of nonnative predatory fish may pose a risk for tidewater goby, as centrarchid fish (sunfish and bass) and tidewater gobies are not usually found together and may not be able to coexist.

F2.1.4.2 Movement

Gobies may move upstream during winter rains and high flows of inlet streams as well as during the summer when algal blooms and hydrogen sulfide forms in the substrate and enters the water column. During this period, most fish are found at the upper end of lagoons where freshwater inflow occurs or at the seaward end where occasional waves wash into the lagoon.

Tidewater goby reproduces predominantly in the summertime when most estuaries/coastal lagoons are closed by sand berms. This knowledge of life history, combined with genetic data, strongly suggests that tidewater goby larvae do not generally have access to the sea or at least do not exhibit the long distance marine dispersal often associated with larval fish. On the other hand, some populations are known to have recolonized, documenting that dispersal does occur. The available evidence suggests that (1) adult tidewater gobies rather than larvae are involved in dispersal (Hellmair and Kinziger 2014), (2) dispersal occurs in association with high stream-flow events that open estuaries to the sea during the winter rainy season (Lafferty et al. 1999), and (3) dispersal along the coast is greatly facilitated by sandy substrate and is limited by rocky coastal substrate. This last inference is consistent with the preference of this benthic fish for sandy bottoms for reproduction and is supported by mitochondrial sequence data (Dawson et al. 2001). This limited dispersal by tidewater goby contrasts with dispersal in the closely related arrow goby, which lives in open marine habitats permitting larval dispersal and exhibits minimal regional genetic differentiation (Dawson et al. 2002). The closest known source population to recolonize the Salinas River Lagoon is in Elkhorn Slough. The mouth of Elkhorn Slough is about 7 miles north of the Salinas River Lagoon and is connected to the lagoon via the Old Salinas River.

F2.1.4.3 Ecological Relationships

Tidewater goby generally live for only 1 year, with few individuals living longer than a year. Reproduction can occur at all times of the year (i.e., protracted iteroparity). Spawning activity peaks twice, once during the spring and again in the late-summer. Fluctuations in reproduction are probably due to death of breeding adults in early summer and colder temperatures or hydrologic disruptions in winter. Male tidewater gobies begin digging breeding burrows in relatively unconsolidated, clean, coarse sand, in April or May after lagoons close to the ocean. After hatching, the larval tidewater gobies emerge from the burrow and swim upward to feed on plankton. Juvenile tidewater gobies become benthic dwellers at 16–18 mm standard length. Tidewater gobies are known to be preyed upon by native species such as small steelhead, prickly sculpin, and staghorn sculpin. Tidewater goby feeds on a broad range of invertebrates and is the only fish species known to date that can fully digest invasive New Zealand mudsnails (*Potamopyrgus antipodarum*), which may constitute a high proportion of its diet when the snails are abundant (Hellmair et al. 2011

USFWS characterizes tidewater goby populations (i.e., localities) along the California coast as metapopulations (a group of distinct subpopulations that are genetically interconnected through occasional exchange of animals). While individual populations may be periodically extirpated under natural conditions, a metapopulation is likely to persist through colonization or recolonization events that establish new populations (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2007 2007). different population structures across its geographic range (extinction–colonization dynamics in the south vs. drift in isolation in the north; Kinziger et al. 2015). Local extirpations may result from one or a series of factors, such as the drying up of some small streams during prolonged droughts, water diversions, and estuarine habitat modifications (2007). Some localities where tidewater gobies have been extirpated apparently have been recolonized when extant populations were present within a relatively short distance of the extirpated population (i.e., less than 6 miles). More recently, another tidewater goby researcher has suggested that recolonizations have typically been between populations separated by no more than 10 miles. Flooding during winter rains can contribute to recolonization of estuarine habitats where tidewater goby populations have previously been extirpated.

Some localities where tidewater gobies have been extirpated apparently have been recolonized when extant populations were present within a relatively short distance of the extirpated population (i.e., less than 6 miles). More recently, another tidewater goby researcher has suggested that recolonizations have typically been between populations separated by no more than 10 miles. Flooding during winter rains can contribute to recolonization of estuarine habitats where tidewater goby populations have previously been extirpated.

F2.1.5 Population Status and Trends

F2.1.5.1 Population Trend

State

The population is presumably stable; however, no long-term monitoring program is available for the tidewater goby, and population dynamics are not well documented for this species. Population trends over the past 10 years or three generations is uncertain but probably within the natural range of variation (three generations span fewer than 10 years). Deriving population size estimates for tidewater goby is difficult because of the variability in local abundance. In addition, seasonal changes in distribution and abundance further hamper efforts to estimate population size, especially for a short-lived species. For example, when lagoons are breached due to flood events during the rainy seasons, tidewater goby populations decrease and then recover during the following summer. Tidewater goby populations also vary greatly with the varying environmental conditions (e.g., drought, El Niño) among years; this environmental variation is a normal phenomenon, but one that makes the determination of trends difficult.

Study Area

The tidewater goby population is presumably increasing. The species had not been documented in the Salinas River Lagoon from 1951 until 2013, when two individuals were found during routine Lagoon monitoring. By 2014, tidewater goby were the second most abundant fish species (after threespine stickleback) observed that year and the fifth most abundant out of 17 species captured over the 4-year survey period. A total of 58 tidewater gobies were observed in 2014, with individuals captured at three different sampling locations within the lagoon. It is likely that the gobies captured during 2013–2014 surveys dispersed from nearby Bennett Slough or Moro Cojo Slough, although no genetic studies have been conducted to confirm this hypothesis (78 FR 8,746-8819).

Recent survey information suggests that the tidewater goby population in the Salinas River Lagoon has most likely persisted since recolonization. As this species rarely lives longer than one year (Hellmair et al. 2014), continuous presence of tidewater goby in the Salinas River Lagoon (and the Old Salinas River) are a strong indication that the species can successfully reproduce in the Salinas River Lagoon over multiple generations. While the exact size of the population is unknown, repeated collections since 2013 confirm that the lagoon provides suitable habitat for tidewater goby growth, survival, and reproduction (Hellmair et al. 2018).

Despite only being found in low densities during the October 2018 survey, overall results suggest that the species was abundant during this time. It should be noted that tidewater goby populations can vary drastically in abundance from year to year – from thousands to millions – depending on whether conditions are favorable during their peak reproductive season (summer, when the likelihood of natural breaching is lowest; Hellmair et al. 2011). The length range of captured tidewater gobies (15 mm) is greater than that found for some tidewater goby populations along the North Coast, which are at an elevated risk of extirpation due to their constrained reproductive period. A reproductive period approximately four months in duration – as estimated for the Salinas River Lagoon population of tidewater goby, suggests a medium level of resilience to environmental disturbance.

F2.1.6 Threats

Tidewater goby is threatened by modification and loss of habitat resulting from coastal development, channelization of streams and estuaries, diversions of water flows, groundwater overdrafting, and alteration of water flows. Potential threats also include discharge of agricultural and sewage effluents, increased sedimentation from improper agricultural activities, unnatural breaching of estuaries and lagoons, upstream alteration of natural sediment flows, introduction of predatory fishes and invasive plants, direct habitat damage, and watercourse contamination resulting from vehicular activity in the vicinity of lagoons.

Coastal developments that modify or destroy coastal brackish-water habitat are a major factor adversely affecting tidewater goby. In many locations, the brackish zone, preferred by tidewater goby, has been modified or eliminated by human-created barriers such as dikes and levees. Coastal lagoons and marshes have been drained and reclaimed for agricultural, residential, and industrial developments. In addition, coastal road and railroad construction has severed the connection between marshes and the ocean, resulting in unnatural water temperature and salinity profiles, and waterways have been dredged for navigation and harbors, resulting in direct losses of wetland habitats as well as indirect losses due to associated changes in salinity. Ongoing threats include loss and alteration of habitat resulting from development projects, flood control, anthropomorphic breaching of coastal lagoons, and freshwater withdrawal. However, current laws and regulations have reduced or eliminated the threat of both large- and small-scale habitat loss and alteration.

Upstream water diversions adversely affect tidewater goby by altering downstream flows, thereby diminishing the extent of habitats that occurred historically at the mouths of many rivers and creeks in California. Alterations of flows upstream of coastal lagoons have already changed the distribution of downstream salinity regimes. Upstream water diversions may change the salinity distribution in estuaries and lagoons and may reduce the size and distribution of goby populations.

The accidental and purposeful introduction of native or nonnative species, particularly predatory fishes and amphibians, has been responsible for drastic reductions in populations of tidewater gobies at some sites (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2007). The introduction of other nonnative species that may compete with tidewater gobies is another cause of decline.

About 50% of the remaining populations are considered vulnerable to extinction due to severe habitat degradation (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2007). Populations in large habitats that are close to other occupied habitats are most likely to persist, but habitat alteration and introduced species may eliminate the species from even large habitats (Lafferty et al. 1999). Failure of tidewater gobies to recolonize habitats after local extirpation may be the result of habitat degradation of the extirpated locality, rather than an inability to recolonize (Lafferty et al. 1999).

F2.1.7 Recovery Planning

F2.1.7.1 Statewide

USFWS released the recovery plan for the tidewater goby in 2005 (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2005). The primary objective of the plan was to manage the threats to and improve the population status of the tidewater goby sufficiently to warrant reclassification (from endangered to threatened status) or delisting. The species was given a recovery priority number of 7C (on a scale of 1–18), per criteria published in the Federal Register (48 FR 43098 and 51985), indicating a species with moderate threats and a high potential for recovery but with some degree of conflict between the species' recovery efforts and economic development. The strategy for achieving this objective is designed to (1) preserve the diversity of tidewater goby habitats throughout the range of the species, (2) preserve the natural processes of recolonization and population exchange that enable population recovery following catastrophic events, (3) and preserve the genetic diversity as it is understood now and in the future.

Recovery criteria were developed by subdividing the geographic distribution of the tidewater goby into 6 recovery units, encompassing a total of 26 Sub-Units defined according to genetic differentiation and geomorphology. According to USFWS (2005), downlisting of tidewater goby may be considered when:

- Specific threats to each metapopulation, such as habitat destruction and alteration (e.g., coastal development, upstream diversion, channelization of rivers and streams, discharge of agriculture and sewage effluents), introduced predators (e.g., centrarchid fishes), and competition with introduced species (e.g., yellowfin and chameleon gobies), have been addressed through the development and implementation of individual management plans that cumulatively cover the full range of the species.
- A metapopulation viability analysis based on scientifically credible monitoring over a 10-year period indicates that each Recovery Unit is viable. The target for downlisting is for individual Sub-Units within each Recovery Unit to have a 75 percent or better chance of persistence for a minimum of 100 years. Specifically, the target is for at least 5 Sub-Units in the North Coast Unit, 8 Sub-Units in the Greater Bay Unit (including the Salinas River), 3 Sub-Units in the Central Coast Unit, 3 Sub-Units in the Conception Unit, 1 Sub-Unit in the Los Angeles/Ventura Unit, and 2 Sub-Units in the South Coast Unit to individually have a 75 percent chance of persisting for 100 years.

If a metapopulation viability analysis projects that all recovery units are viable, and individual Sub-Units within each Recovery Unit have a 95% or better chance of persistence for a minimum of 100 years, then tidewater goby may be considered for delisting (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2005).

F2.1.7.2 Study Area

The Salinas River is included in the GB11 sub-unit of the recovery plan (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2005). The available tidewater goby habitat in the river encompasses approximately 100 hectares (250 acres). Approximately 20%of the adjacent land is owned and managed by the Salinas National Wildlife Refuge; the remaining adjacent lands are privately owned. At the time the recovery plan was published, tidewater gobies had not been observed in the river since 1951. The recovery plan notes the status of the Salinas River estuary as "Water Quality Limited" as designated by State Water Resources Control Board (State Water Board). Pollutants and stressors (and their respective potential sources in parentheses) are listed in the plan and include fecal coliform (past sewage discharge), pesticides (agriculture, irrigated crop production, agricultural storm runoff, agricultural irrigation tailwater, agricultural return flows, nonpoint source), nutrients (agriculture), salinity/chlorides (agriculture, natural sources, nonpoint source), and sedimentation/siltation (agriculture, irrigated crop production, range grazing-riparian and/or upland, agricultural storm runoff, road construction, land development, channel erosion, nonpoint source; U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2005).

Actions needed for recovery in the Salinas River and statewide include (1) monitoring, protecting and enhancing currently occupied tidewater goby habitat; (2) conducting biological research to enhance the ability to integrate land use practices with tidewater goby recovery and revise recovery tasks as pertinent new information becomes available; (3) evaluating and implementing translocation where appropriate; and (4) increasing public awareness about tidewater gobies.

In March 2014, the USFWS announced a 12-month finding on a petition to reclassify the tidewater goby as threatened under the ESA. After review of all available scientific and commercial information, USFWS found that downlisting the tidewater goby from endangered to threatened was warranted and proposed to reclassify tidewater goby as threatened under the ESA (79 FR 14340). However, to date, no reclassification has been made and tidewater goby are still federally listed as endangered.

F2.1.8 Existing Conservation Actions in the Study Area

Since the listing of tidewater goby in 1994, several conservation efforts have been undertaken by various federal, State, and local agencies and by private organizations. The following briefly describes some regulatory protection and conservation measures currently in place for the population as a whole and for the Salinas River subpopulation.

F2.1.8.1 Survey, Monitoring, and Research

USFWS has developed a survey protocol to facilitate the determination of presence or absence of the tidewater goby in habitats that have potential to support it (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2005). The primary use for this protocol is for project-level surveys in support of requests for consultation under section 7 of the ESA, as amended. Additionally, this protocol may also be used for section 10(a)(1)(B) permit applications, and to determine general presence–absence for other management purposes. Several assessments of the tidewater goby population in various localities have been conducted using these methods.

F2.1.9 Literature Cited

Ahnelt H., J. Göschl, M. N. Dawson, and D. K. Jacobs. 2004. Geographical Variation in the Cephalic Lateral Line Canals of *Eucyclogobius newberryi* (Teleostei, Gobiidae) and Its Comparison with Molecular Phylogeography. Folia Zoologica 53(4):385–398.

Crabtree, C. B. 1985. Allozyme Variability in the Tidewater Goby, *Eucyclogobius newberryi* (Pisces: Gobiidae). Isozyme Bulletin 18:70.

Dawson, M. N., J. L. Stanton, and D. K. Jacobs. 2001. Phylogeography of the Tidewater Goby, *Eucyclogobius newberryi* (Teleostei, Gobiidae), in Coastal California. Evolution 55(6):1,167–1,179.

Dawson, M. N., K. D. Louie, M. Barlow, D. K. Jacobs, and C. C. Swift. 2002. Comparative phylogeography of sympatric sister species, *Clevelandia ios* and *Eucyclogobius newberryi* (Teleostei, Gobiidae), across the California Transition Zone. Molecular Ecology 11(6):1,065–1,075.

Gill, T. 1863. Notice of a Collection of Fishes of California Presented to the Smithsonian Institution by Mr. Samuel Hubbard. Proceedings of the Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia 14:274–282.

Girard, C. 1856. A List of the Fishes Collected in California by Mr. E. Samuels, with Descriptions of the New Species. Boston Journal of Natural History 6:533–544.

Hagar Environmental Services. 2014. Salinas River Lagoon Monitoring Report 2013. Annual Report. Submitted to the Monterey County Water Resources Agency.

Hellmair, M., G. Goldsmith, and A. P. Kinziger. 2011. Preying on Invasives: The Exotic New Zealand Mudsnail in the Diet of the Endangered Tidewater Goby. Biological Invasions 13:2,197. doi:10.1007/s10530-011-0054-3.

Hellmair, M., and A. P. Kinziger. 2014. Increased Extinction Potential of Insular Fish Populations with Reduced Life History Variation and Low Genetic Diversity. PLoS ONE 9(11):e113139. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0113139.

Hellmair, M., D. Lee, and D. Demko. 2018. Salinas River Lagoon Fish Distribution Study, Summary of Recent Tidewater Goby Surveys. Report prepared for the Monterey County Water Resources Agency. November 2018. 21 pp.

Irwin, J. F., and D. L. Soltz. 1984. The Natural History of the Tidewater Goby, *Eucyclogobius newberryi*, in the San Antonio and Shuman Creek System, Santa Barbara County, California. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Sacramento Endangered Species Office Contract No. 11310-0215-2.

Kinziger, A. P., M. Hellmair, W. T. McCraney, D. Jacobs, and G. Goldsmith. 2015. Temporal Genetic Analysis of the Endangered Tidewater Goby: Extinction–Colonization Dynamics or Drift in Isolation? Molecular Ecology 24:5,544–5,560.

Lafferty, K.D., C. C. Swift, and R. F. Ambrose. 1999. Extirpation and Recolonization in a Metapopulation of an Endangered Fish, the Tidewater Goby. Conservation Biology 13:1,447–1,453.

Swift, C. C., J. L. Nelson, C. Maslow, and T. Stein. 1989. Biology and Distribution of the Tidewater Goby, Eucyclogobius newberryi (Pisces: Gobiidae) of California. Contributions in Science 404. Natural History Museum of Los Angeles County, Los Angeles.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 2005. Recovery Plan for the Tidewater Goby (*Eucyclogobius newberryi*). U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Portland, OR. 199 pp.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 2007. Tidewater Goby (*Eucyclogobius newberryi*) 5-Year Review: Summary and Evaluation. Ventura Fish and Wildlife Office, Ventura, CA.

Worcester, K. R. 1992. Habitat Utilization in a Central California Coastal Lagoon by the Tidewater Goby (*Eucyclogobius newberryi*). Master's thesis. California Polytechnic State University, San Luis Obispo. 218 pp.

Attachment F2

Figures

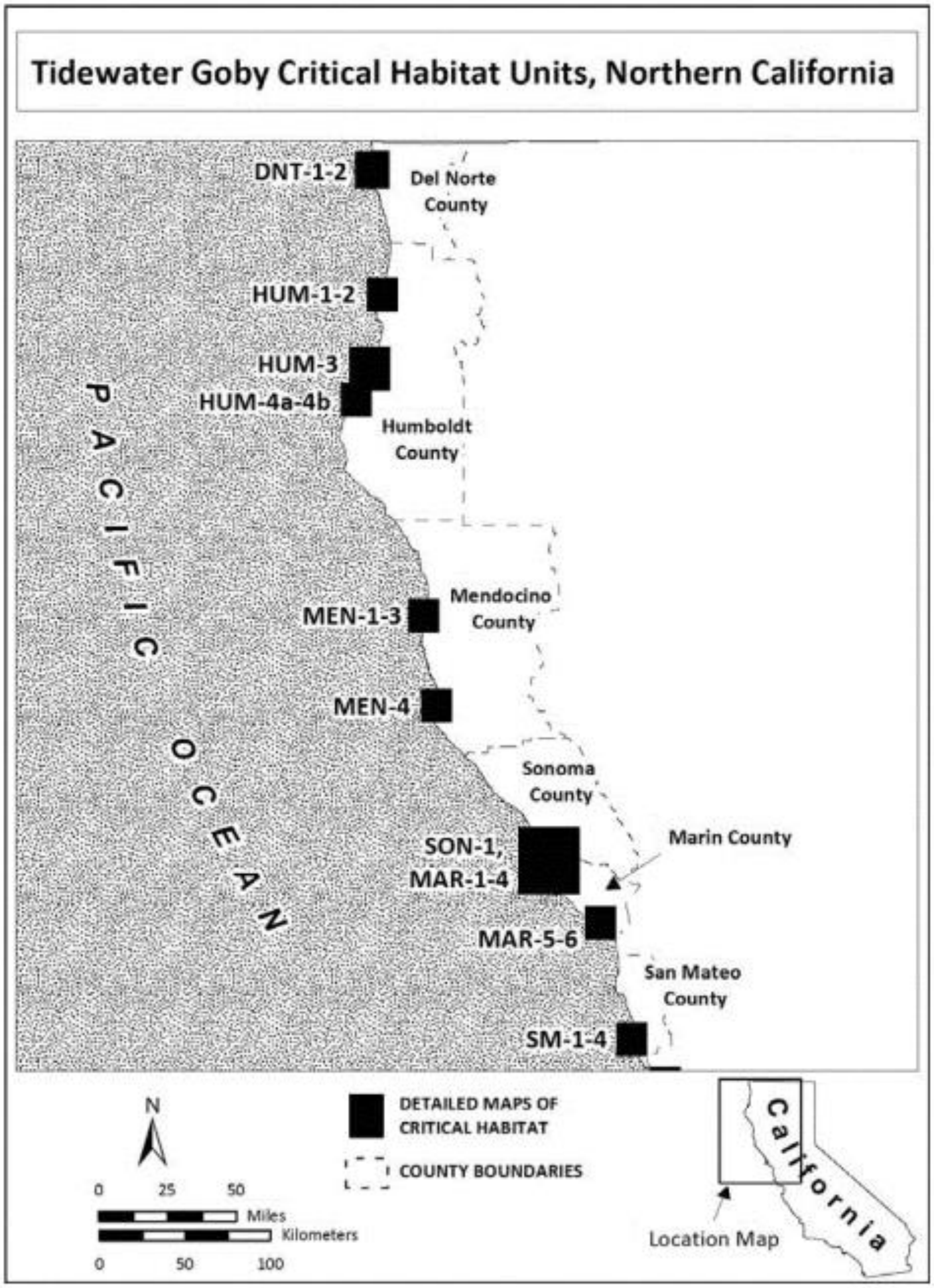

Figure F2-1a. Tidewater Goby Critical Habitat—Northern California

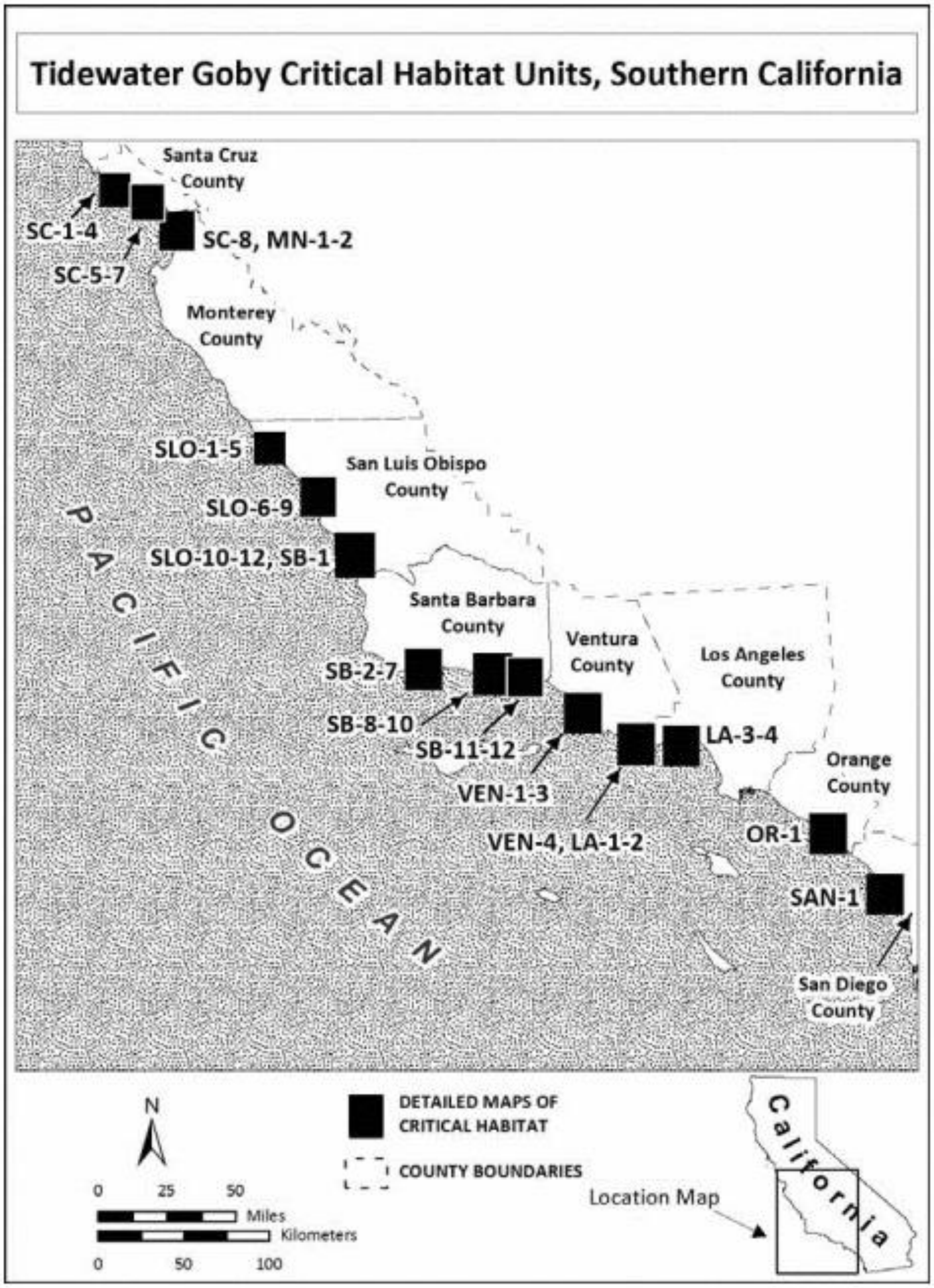

Figure F2-1b. Tidewater Goby Critical Habitat—Southern California

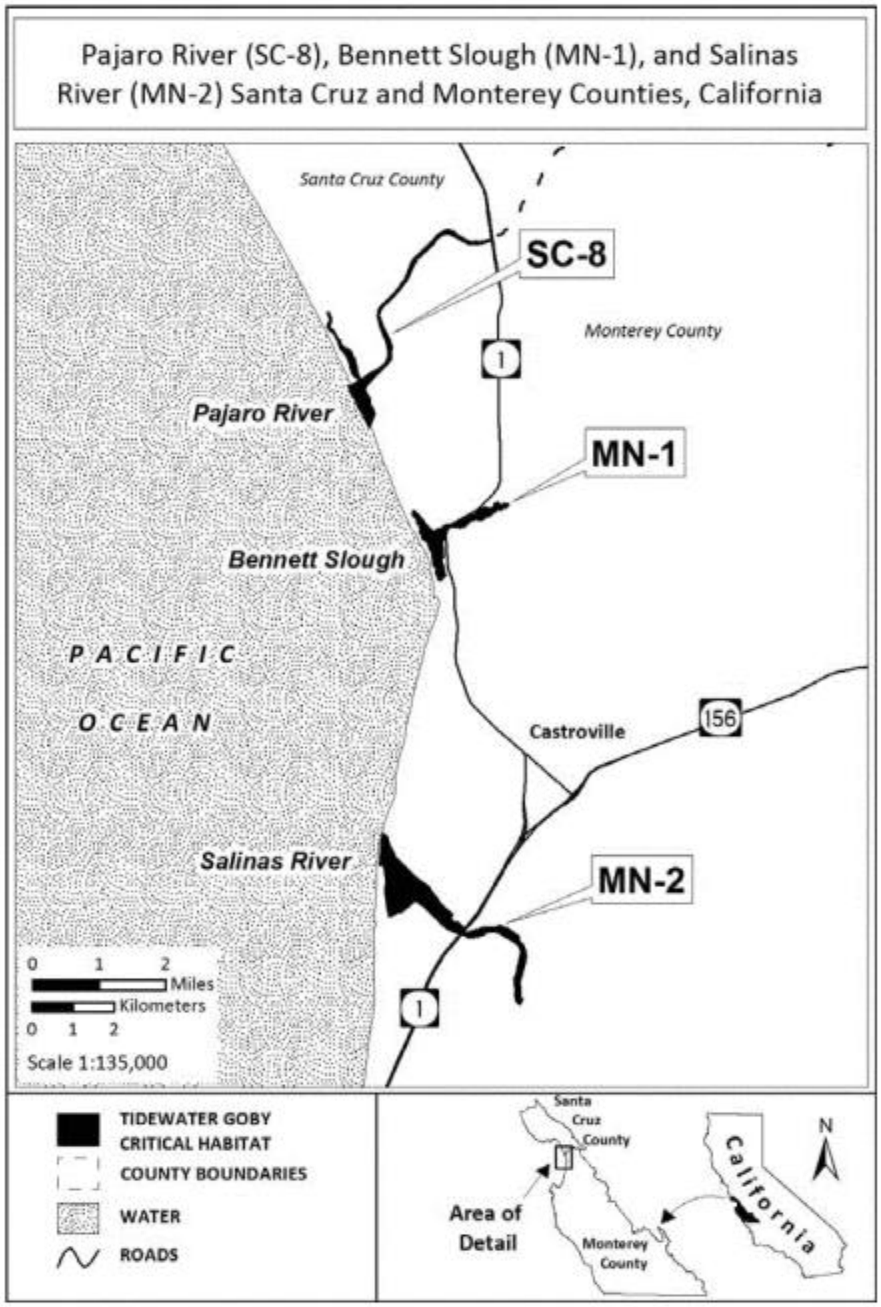

Figure F2-1c. Tidewater Goby Critical Habitat—Santa Cruz and Monterey Counties, California

Figure F2-2. Distribution of Tidewater Goby in California

Appendix F3
California Red-Legged Frog Species Account

F3.1 California Red-Legged Frog (*Rana draytonii)*

F3.1.1 Legal Status

F3.1.1.1 State

California red-legged frog is identified as a State Species of Special Concern (Thomson et al. 2016:100–105).

F3.1.1.2 Federal

California red-legged frog is federally listed as threatened throughout its range in California. It was listed by USFWS on May 23, 1996 (61 FR 25813).

F3.1.1.3 Critical Habitat

Critical habitat was designated in 2006 (71 FR 19243), and revised on March 17, 2010 (75 FR 12816).

F3.1.1.4 Notes

This species is synonymous with *Rana aurora draytonii.*

F3.1.2 Taxonomy

Rana draytonii was initially described as a distinct species. In 1917, Camp (Grinnell and Camp 1917 in Shaffer et al. 2004) reclassified it as a subspecies of *Rana aurora*. Based on DNA and morphological differences, Shaffer et al. (2004) suggested *R. draytonii* as distinct from *Rana aurora* and *Rana cascadae*; this distinction is recognized by CDFW and USFWS.

F3.1.3 Distribution

F3.1.3.1 State

Historical

Historically, the California red-legged frog ranged throughout the Sierra Nevada foothills and the Coast Range Mountains from southern Mendocino County south to Baja California Norte, Mexico (Thomson et al. 2016: 100-105) below 3,500 feet.

Recent

California red-legged frog is currently found primarily in central California coastal drainages from Marin County south to Baja California, Mexico, Sierra and in isolated drainages in the Sierra Nevada, northern Coast, and northern Transverse Ranges (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2002).

F3.1.3.2 Study Area

Historical

There have been no comprehensive surveys for California red-legged frog within the Salinas River and its major tributaries. Historic occurrences are known from the following locations.

- Nacimiento River, near the Nacimiento-Ferguson Road (1981).
- San Lorenzo Creek, seven miles west of King City (1949).
- Chalone Creek in Pinnacles National Monument (1939) (McGraw 2008).

Recent

California red-legged frogs have been observed on a few occasions throughout the study area. An occurrence was reported near the east bank of the Salinas River in streamside emergent vegetation near river mile 5 in River Management Unit 7. In 1999, a juvenile California red-legged frog was observed along the edge of the Salinas River between river mile 5 and the lagoon (Monterey County Water Resource Agency 2016). Between 2002 and 2004, California red-legged frogs were observed in an unnamed tributary to Natividad Creek, northeast of the town of Salinas. There are several occurrences of California red-legged frogs in the sloughs, ditches, and other agricultural water features surrounding Oakdale and Prunedale, as well as in the region of Elkhorn Slough, northwest of the town of Salinas (California Department of Fish and Wildlife 2018).

Scientists from The Nature Conservancy have observed California red-legged frogs within Los Vaqueros Creek (Arroyo Seco tributary) and upper Gabilan Creek; staff from Pinnacles National Monument have reported them in Chalone Creek (McGraw 2008; California Department of Fish and Wildlife 2018). Several occurrences of California red-legged frog were identified in visual and aquatic surveys of stock ponds and other water features on Dorrance Ranch in the foothills west of Spence and Chualar between 2006 and 2012; several previously occupied locations on Dorrance Ranch were re-surveyed in 2014 with no detections found (California Department of Fish and Wildlife 2018).

F3.1.4 Natural History

F3.1.4.1 Habitat Requirements

California red-legged frogs breed in ponds (natural and artificial); they also use marshes, streams, freshwater sections of lagoons, and other waterways throughout their range. Breeding takes place primarily in ponds and less frequently in stream pools (Thomson et al. 2016:100–105). Breeding ponds typically require some density of emergent vegetation to which females deposit egg masses; however, adult density in breeding ponds was found to not be dependent on percent cover (0%, </= 15%, > 15%) of emergent vegetation (Thomson et al. 2016:100–105). Breeding pools must remain wetted for 15–23 weeks to allow for development from eggs to metamorphosed juveniles (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2002).

After breeding, adults typically disperse to nearby upland habitat that includes shaded, slow-moving streams; spaces under downed trees, logs, rocks and vegetation; agricultural features such as drains, watering troughs, abandoned sheds, or hay-ricks; cracks in the bottom of dried ponds; small mammal burrows; and moist leaf litter (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2002).

F3.1.4.2 Movement

Populations appear to consist of both migratory (11–22% of the adult population) frogs that move 660–9,240 feet and resident frogs that remain at the breeding site (Bulger et al. 2003). Fellers and Kleeman (2007) found that adult female frogs were more frequently migratory than males, although migration behavior did not differ between the sexes among those individuals that did migrate. Frogs have been observed to make long-distance movements that are straight-line, point-to-point migrations rather than using corridors between habitats. Dispersing frogs in northern Santa Cruz County traveled distances from 0.25 mile to more than 2 miles without regard to topography, vegetation type, or riparian corridors (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2002).

F3.1.4.3 Ecological Relationships

Within the study area, California red-legged frog distribution and habitat requirements overlaps with habitat niches occupied by steelhead trout, tidewater goby, foothill yellow-legged frog, California tiger salamander, arroyo toad, and western pond turtle. Steelhead occupy the Salinas River and its undammed tributaries as well as the lagoon and require intact riparian corridors to maintain cool water temperatures and provide complex underwater habitats such as undercut banks. Tidewater goby occupies lagoon habitat and particularly low flow, backwater habitats. California tiger salamander occupies grasslands and oak woodlands with stock ponds or seasonal wetlands in coastal and inner coastal ranges. Arroyo toad occurs primarily in the upper tributaries of coastal drainages and occurs in sandy to gravelly streamside pools and adjacent riparian habitat. Western pond turtle occurs in a wide variety of permanent and intermittent aquatic habitats (e.g., streams and rivers, lagoon backwaters, lakes and ponds) and requires adjacent uplands with open grasslands and sandy soils. Conservation of these species and their habitat will likely benefit California red-legged frog (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2002).

F3.1.5 Population Status and Trends

F3.1.5.1 Population Trend

State

California red-legged frog population has declined 70% throughout the range; it is extirpated from 24 of the originally occupied 46 counties (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2002). Declines have occurred across the range of the species but have been greatest in the southern portion of the range. In central coastal California, populations are more robust (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2007).

Study Area

California red-legged frogs were once widespread and abundant in the inner coast ranges between the Salinas and San Joaquin Valleys. Currently, no more than 10% of the historic localities within the Salinas River hydrographic basin and inner coast ranges still support the species (McGraw 2008).

F3.1.6 Threats

Threats to the California red-legged frog in the Salinas Valley include agriculture, livestock (cattle grazing and/or dairies), mining, nonnative species (bullfrogs [*Rana catesbeiana*], mosquito fish [*Gambusia affinis*], and predatory fish), recreation, urbanization and water management/diversions/reservoirs (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2002). The greatest threat facing California red-legged frog is likely habitat loss and alteration as a result of urbanization and agriculture; agricultural development also increases pesticide exposure, which may have strong negative impacts, especially for cholinesterase-inhibiting pesticides although the species still persists in some dense agricultural settings in Monterey and Santa Cruz Counties (Thomson et al. 2016:100–105). Conversion of wetlands and modifications to wetland hydrology also likely have detrimental effects.

F3.1.7 Recovery Planning

F3.1.7.1 State

The California red-legged frog recovery plan was authored in 2002 by USFWS. The recovery plan identifies eight recovery units and 35 Core Areas; each recovery unit has different strategies to best meet the goal of delisting (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2002).

F3.1.7.2 Study Area

The Central Coast and Diablo Range and Salinas Valley Recovery Units overlap with the study area. The status of recovery in the Central Coast portion of the study area is "high"; there are "many existing populations, many areas of high habitat suitability, and low to high levels of threat." The status of recovery in the Diablo Range and Salinas Valley is "medium"; there are "numerous existing populations, some areas of medium habitat suitability and high levels of threats" (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2002). The overall recovery strategy includes (1) protecting existing populations; (2) restoring and creating habitat the will be protected and managed in perpetuity; (3) surveying and monitoring populations and conducting research on the biology of and threats to the subspecies; and (4) reestablishing populations within the historic range (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2002).

F3.1.8 Existing Conservation Actions in the Study Area

Elkhorn Slough National Estuarine Research Reserve (ESNERR) is a concentration of protected lands to the north of Salinas Lagoon. ESNERR is a federal reserve where research and management focuses on understanding and protecting ecosystem function and rare species habitat. In addition, there are several properties to the north, east, and south of the reserve that are also protected and managed to benefit ecosystem function. Freshwater restoration efforts target California red-legged frog, western pond turtle, and the Santa Cruz long-toed salamander.

To the south of the Salinas River Lagoon, near the city of Seaside, the Fort Ord Reuse Authority is currently working on the Fort Ord Habitat Conservation Plan (FOHCP). Once established, the FOHCP will protect and manage a portion of lands within the former base at Fort Ord to benefit native flora and fauna, particularly the rare and endangered species that occur within the planning area including the California red-legged frog and California tiger salamander.

F3.1.9 Literature Cited

Bulger, J. B., N. J. Scott, and R. B. Seymour. 2003. Terrestrial Activity and Conservation of Adult California Red-Legged Frog *Rana aurora* in Coastal Forests and Grasslands. Biological Conservation 110:85–95.

California Department of Fish and Wildlife. 2018. California Natural Diversity Database, RareFind 5, Version 5.2.14. (June 5, 2018). California red-legged frog.

Fellers, G. M., and P. M. Kleeman. 2007. California Red-Legged Frog (*Rana draytonii*) Movement and Habitat Use: Implications for Conservation. Journal of Herpetology 41(2):276–286.

Grinnell, J., and C. L. Camp. 1917. A Distributional List of the Amphibians and Reptiles of California. University of California Publications in Zoology 17:127–208.

McGraw, J. 2008. Rapid Biological Resource Assessment for the Salinas River, Monterey County, California. Prepared for The Nature Conservancy, San Francisco, CA.

Monterey County Water Resource Agency. 2016. Biological Assessment, Salinas River Stream Maintenance Program. January. Salinas, CA. Prepared by Elizabeth Kraft, Jim Robins, Sasha Gennet, April Zohn, Shaunna Juarez, and Donna Meyers.

Shaffer, H. B., G. M. Fellers, S. R. Voss, J. Oliver, and G. Pauly. 2004. Species Boundaries, Phylogeography, and Conservation Genetics of the Red-Legged Frog (*Rana aurora/draytonii*) complex. Molecular Ecology 13:2667–2677.

Thomson, R. C., A. N. Wright, and H. B. Shaffer. 2016. California Amphibian and Reptile Species of Special Concern. First Edition. Oakland, CA: University of California Press.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 2002. Recovery Plan for the California Red-Legged Frog (*Rana aurora draytonii*). Region 1, Portland, OR. May 28, 2002.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 2007. Biological Opinion on Issuance of Department of the Army Permits to the Monterey County Water Resource Agency for Construction of a Surface Water Diversion Structure in the Salinas River, Near the City of Salinas (Corps File Number 24976S) and for Breaching of the Salinas River Lagoon (Corps File Number 16798S) in Monterey County, California (1-08-06-F-54). Prepared by David M. Pereksta, Assistance Field Supervisor of the USFWS. Prepared for Jane M. Hicks, Chief, Regulatory Branch, of the ACOE.

Appendix F4

California Tiger Salamander Species Account

F4.1 California Tiger Salamander (*Ambystoma californiense*)

F4.1.1 Legal Status

F4.1.1.1 State

California tiger salamander is listed as threatened under the CESA; this listing is not divided into DPSs (see *Federal* subsection below).

F4.1.1.2 Federal

There are several DPSs of California tiger salamander. The Central population of California tiger salamander was federally listed as threatened in 2004 (69 FR 47212). The Central California DPS is restricted to disjunct populations that form a ring along the foothills of the Central Valley and Inner Coast Range from San Luis Obispo, Kern, and Tulare Counties in the south, to Sacramento and Yolo Counties in the north.

F4.1.1.3 Critical Habitat

Critical Habitat was designated for the Central California population in 2005 (70 FR 49379).

F4.1.2 Taxonomy

Formerly regarded as a subspecies of *A. tigrinum*, California tiger salamander (*Ambystoma californiense*) was first described by Gray in 1853 based on specimens that had been collected in Monterey, California. Based on recent studies of the genetics, geographic distribution, and ecological differences among the members of *A. tigrinum* complex, California tiger salamander has been determined to represent a distinct species (69 FR 68567–68609). The biogeographical and genetic information supporting the recognition of the Santa Barbara County and Sonoma County populations as DPSs under the federal ESA are reviewed in those listing decisions (65 FR 3095; 3095–3109, 68 FR 53:13497–13520).

F4.1.3 Description

California tiger salamander is a large, stocky salamander, with a broad, rounded snout. Total body length of adults range approximately from 6 to 9.5 inches (U.S. Fish and Wildlife 2017). Females are about 7 inches. *Tiger* comes from the white or yellow bars on California tiger salamanders. The background color is black. The belly varies from almost uniform white or pale yellow to a variegated pattern of white or pale yellow and black (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2017).

F4.1.4 Distribution

F4.1.4.1 State

Historical

California tiger salamander is endemic to California. Historically, California tiger salamander was endemic to the San Joaquin–Sacramento Valley and the Central Coast and was likely found in most low-elevation grassland-oak woodland plant communities (Shaffer et al. 2013 in U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2017). Although this species still occurs within much of its range, it has been extirpated from many areas it once occupied (Stebbins and McGinnes 1985; Fisher and Shaffer 1996). The loss of California tiger salamander populations has been due primarily to habitat loss within their historic range (Fisher and Shaffer 1996).

Based on genetic analysis, there are six populations of California tiger salamanders, distributed as follows: (1) Santa Rosa area of Sonoma County, (2) Bay Area (central and southern Alameda, Santa Clara, western Stanislaus, western Merced, and the majority of San Benito Counties), (3) Central Valley (Yolo, Sacramento, Solano, eastern Contra Costa, northeast Alameda, San Joaquin, Stanislaus, Merced, and northwestern Madera Counties), (4) southern San Joaquin Valley (portions of Madera, central Fresno, and northern Tulare and Kings Counties), (5) Central Coast range (southern Santa Cruz, Monterey, northern San Luis Obispo, and portions of western San Benito, Fresno, and Kern Counties), and (6) Santa Barbara County (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2017).

Recent

The Central California tiger salamander occurs in the following counties: Alameda, Amador, Calaveras, Contra Costa, Fresno, Kern, Kings, Madera, Mariposa, Merced, Monterey, Sacramento, San Benito, San Mateo, San Joaquin, San Luis Obispo, Santa Clara, Santa Cruz, Stanislaus, Solano, Tulare, Tuolumne, and Yolo. Recent genetic studies also show that there has been little, if any, gene flow between the Central California DPS, the Sonoma County DPS, and the Santa Barbara County DPS for a substantial period of time (Shaffer et al. 2004, 2013). In addition, genetic studies have shown that within the Central California DPS there is genetic differentiation between four sub-groups that corresponds with the geographic distribution of those groups: (1) Southern San Joaquin Valley; (2) Central Valley; (3) Bay Area; and (4) Central Coast Range (Shaffer et al. 2004, 2013).

F4.1.4.2 Study Area

Central California tiger salamander is distributed throughout much of the study area. The California Natural Diversity Database includes approximately 90 occurrences of this species in the study area. The occurrences are mainly concentrated around Fort Hunter Liggett and the Fort Ord National Monument (California Department of Fish and Wildlife 2018).

F4.1.5 Natural History

F4.1.5.1 Habitat Requirements

California tiger salamanders require two major habitat components: aquatic breeding sites and terrestrial aestivation or refuge sites. California tiger salamanders inhabit valley and foothill grasslands and the grassy understory of open woodlands, usually within 1 mile of water (Thomson et al. 2016).

California tiger salamander is terrestrial as an adult and spends most of its time underground in subterranean refugia. Underground retreats usually consist of ground-squirrel burrows and occasionally human-made structures. Adults emerge from underground to breed, but only for brief periods during the year. Tiger salamanders breed and lay their eggs primarily in vernal pools and other ephemeral ponds that fill in winter and often dry out by summer (Loredo et al. 1996); they sometimes use permanent human-made ponds (e.g., stock ponds), reservoirs, and small lakes that do not support predatory fish or bullfrogs (see *Ecological Relationships* discussion below) (Stebbins 1972; U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2017). Streams are rarely used for reproduction, but California tiger salamanders have been reported in ditches with seasonal wetland habitat and in slow-flowing swales and creeks (Alvarez et al. 2013).

California tiger salamander is particularly sensitive to the duration of ponding in aquatic breeding sites. Because tiger salamanders have a long developmental period, the longest lasting seasonal ponds or vernal pools are the most suitable type of breeding habitat for this species; these pools are also typically the largest in size (Thomson et al. 2016). At least 10 weeks are required to complete metamorphosis (Feaver 1971); however, 4–5 months are usually required (Shaffer and Trenham 2005). Aquatic sites that are considered suitable for breeding should pond or retain water for a minimum of 10 weeks. Optimum breeding sites are ephemeral and should dry down for at least 30 days before the rain being in the fall (around August or September) to prevent nonnative predators from establishing (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2017). Moreover, large vernal pool complexes, rather than isolated pools, probably offer the best quality habitat; these areas can support a mixture of core breeding sites and nearby refuge habitat (Jennings and Hayes 1994). USFWS (2017) states that, to remain viable, populations of California tiger salamanders require at least four ponds on preserves of no less than 3,398 acres, and that the ponds should have variation in depth and ponding duration so that at least some fill during different environmental conditions (e.g., low annual rainfall). USFWS determined the minimum preserve size based on the 1.3-mile maximum dispersal distance (i.e., a preserve with a radius of 1.3 miles is 3,398 acres). USFWS also explains that four ponds should provide the necessary amount of redundancy to ensure long-term habitat availability (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2017).

The suitability of California tiger salamander habitat is proportional to the abundance of upland refuge sites are near aquatic breeding sites. California tiger salamanders primarily use California ground squirrel burrows as refuge sites (Loredo et al. 1996; Trenham 2001); Botta's pocket gopher burrows are also frequently used (Barry and Shaffer 1994; Jennings and Hayes 1994), as well as human-made structures. California tiger salamanders also use logs, piles of lumber, and shrink-swell cracks in the ground for cover (Holland et al. 1990). The presence and abundance of tiger salamanders in many areas are limited by the number of small-mammal burrows available; salamanders are typically absent from areas that appear suitable other than their lack of burrows. Loredo et al. (1996) emphasized the importance of California ground squirrel burrows as refugia for California tiger salamanders, and suggested that a commensal relationship existed between the California tiger salamander and California ground squirrel in which tiger salamanders benefit from the burrowing activities of squirrels. In a study conducted near Concord, California, Loredo et al. (1996) found that California ground squirrel burrows were used almost exclusively as refuge sites by California tiger salamanders. Also, tiger salamanders apparently do not avoid burrows occupied by ground squirrels (Loredo et al. 1996).

The proximity of refuge sites to aquatic breeding sites also affects the suitability of salamander habitat. California tiger salamanders are known to travel distances up to 1.4 miles from breeding sites (Trenham et al. 2001;Orloff 2011) and tend to live between approximately 100 yards and 0.6 mile (or more) from their breeding sites (Ford et al. 2013). Based on capture data from a single-season study at Olcott Lake in Jepson Prairie Preserve (Solano County), Trenham and Shaffer (2005) estimated that 95% of adult and subadult tiger salamanders occurred within approximately 0.4 mile of the breeding pond. However, their model also suggested that 85% of subadults were concentrated between 0.1 and 0.4 mile from the pond. During a 5-year study of a proposed housing development in the northwestern corner of the Antioch HCP/NCCP inventory area, Orloff (2011) recorded the majority of captured salamanders at least 0.5 mile from the nearest breeding pond and continuing work at Olcott Lake has documented a few individuals moving up to 0.6 mile from the pond (Orloff 2011). Therefore, although salamanders may migrate up to 1.4 miles from breeding sites, migration distances are likely to be less in areas supporting refugia closer to breeding sites. Also, habitat complexes that include upland refugia relatively close to breeding sites are considered more suitable because predation risk and physiological stress in California tiger salamanders probably increases with migration distance. Orloff (2011) also noted that California tiger salamanders also appear to have fidelity to specific areas of upland habitat.

F4.1.5.2 Reproduction

Adult California tiger salamanders migrate to and congregate at aquatic breeding sites during warm rains, primarily between November and February (Barry and Shaffer 1994). During the winter rains, tiger salamanders breed and lay eggs primarily in vernal pools and other shallow, ephemeral ponds that fill in winter and often dry by summer (Loredo et al. 1996). Eggs are laid singly or in clumps on both submerged and emergent vegetation and on submerged debris in shallow water. In ponds without vegetation, females lay eggs on objects on the pond bottom (Stebbins 1972; Barry and Shaffer 1994; Jennings and Hayes 1994). After breeding, adults leave the breeding ponds and return to their refugia (small mammal burrows, etc.).

After approximately 2 weeks, the salamander eggs begin to hatch into larvae. Once larvae reach a minimum body size they metamorphose into terrestrial juvenile salamanders. At a minimum, salamanders require 10 weeks living in ponded water to complete metamorphosis but in general development is completed in 3–6 months (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency 2013). If a pond dries prior to metamorphosis, the larvae will desiccate and die (69 FR 68567–68609). Juveniles disperse from aquatic breeding sites to upland habitats after metamorphosis (Holland et al. 1990).

F4.1.5.3 Movement

Adult California tiger salamanders migrate to and congregate at aquatic breeding sites during warm rains, primarily between November and April (Barry and Shaffer 1994; Orloff 2011; U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2017), with most activity occurring between December and February (California Department of Fish and Game 2010). Tiger salamanders are rarely observed except during this period (Loredo et al. 1996). Dispersal of juveniles from natal ponds to underground refugia occurs during summer months, when breeding ponds dry out. Juveniles disperse from breeding sites after spending a few hours or days near the pond margin (Jennings and Hayes 1994). Dispersal distance varies and may increase with an increase in precipitation (California Department of Fish and Wildlife 2010; Orloff 2011).

Some genetic data suggest low rates of California tiger salamander migration between vernal pool complexes (Irschick and Shaffer 1997) or metapopulations; this suggests that natural colonization after a local extirpation event may be unlikely (Fisher and Shaffer 1994 in U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2017). Trenham et al. (2001) showed that pool complexes occupied by California tiger salamander fit a metapopulation model, and dispersal rates between ponds may be high for both first-time and experienced breeders; and dispersal rates are probably high enough to prevent local extirpations within a pool complex. Wang et al. (2009) also found that dispersal through grassland is twice as costly for the species (i.e., difficulty of movement) as through chaparral, and that dispersal through oak woodland is the most costly for California tiger salamander movement. These differences in energetic expenditure may be due to differences in the density of grasses and forbs at ground level in each of these community types.

F4.1.5.4 Ecological Relationships

California tiger salamander larvae and embryos are susceptible to predation by fish (Stebbins 1972; Thomson et al. 2016), and larvae are rarely found in aquatic sites that support predatory fish (Shaffer and Stanley 1992 in Jennings and Hayes 1994;). Aquatic larvae are taken by herons and egrets and possibly garter snakes (Thomson et al. 2016). Shaffer et al. (1993) (in U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2017) also found a negative correlation between the occurrence of California tiger salamanders and the presence of bullfrogs; however, this relationship was detected only in unvegetated ponds. This suggests that vegetation structure in aquatic breeding sites may be important for survival. Because of their secretive behavior and limited periods above ground, adult California tiger salamanders have few predators (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2000).

F4.1.6 Population Status and Trends

F4.1.6.1 Population Trend

State

Very little is known about the historical abundance of the Central California tiger salamander. There are no data regarding the absolute number of individuals of this species due to their time spent aestivating in burrows, which makes them difficult to observe (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2017). The available data suggest that most populations consist of relatively small numbers of breeding adults; breeding populations in the range of a few pairs up to a few dozen pairs are common, and numbers above 100 breeding individuals are rare (California Department of Fish and Wildlife 2010). However, this species exhibits high variation in population numbers (Loredo et al. 1996; Trenham et al. 2000; U.S. Fish and Wildlife 2017).

Study Area

Similar to the statewide level of population status and trends, population status and trends in the study area are difficult to assess. Multiple studies on breeding Central California tiger salamander populations, most of which have shown large fluctuation in numbers of breeding adults as well as numbers of larvae produced. In Monterey County, Trenham et al. (2000) found the number of breeding adults visiting a pond varied from 57 to 244 individuals.

The native population of Central California tiger salamanders in the Salinas Valley have been seriously impacted by nonnative tiger salamanders. Approximately 65 years ago (or 30–40 salamander generations), thousands of nonnative eastern or barred tiger salamanders (*Ambystoma tigrinum mavortium*) were introduced from Texas and other parts of the southwestern United States into California by commercial bait dealers. These introductions have been traced to a suspected 15 locations found primarily in the Salinas Valley (Fitzpatrick and Shaffer 2007). Fitzpatrick and Shaffer (2007) conjecture that the hybrid swarm may have remained contained within the Salinas Valley during this time because of its relative high amount of perennial breeding ponds that contain nonnative tiger salamanders compared to other areas to the north that have more natural seasonal pools and native Central California tiger salamanders. Fitzpatrick and Shaffer (2007) determined that the distribution of introduced tiger salamander genes is largely confined to within 7.5 miles of introduction sites and in general, the distribution of hybridization seems to decrease in populations the further they are from the introduction sites in the Salinas Valley (Fitzpatrick and Shaffer 2007; Shaffer et al. 2013 in U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2017).

Fitzpatrick and Shaffer (2007) point out that the two areas of the Salinas River watershed with pure or nearly pure native tiger salamanders (Fort Ord and Peachtree Valley) have high concentrations of natural seasonal pools. All California tiger salamanders on Fort Hunter Liggett, which occur in at least 16 locations, are considered hybrids (U.S. Army Garrison Fort Hunter Liggett 2012).

F4.1.7 Threats

The two most significant threats to California tiger salamander throughout its range are widespread habitat loss and habitat fragmentation. These factors have both been caused by conversion of valley and foothill grassland and oak woodland habitats to agricultural and urban development (Stebbins 1985). For example, residential development and land use changes in the California tiger salamander's range have removed or fragmented vernal pool complexes, eliminated refuge sites adjacent to breeding areas, and reduced habitat suitability for the species over much of the Central Valley (Barry and Shaffer 1994; Jennings and Hayes 1994). Grading activities have probably also eliminated large numbers of salamanders directly (Barry and Shaffer 1994). Overall, approximately 75% of habitat for California tiger salamander within its historic range has been lost (Fisher and Shaffer 1996).

The primary threat to the Central Coast Recovery Unit (in which the study area is located) is hybridization between California tiger salamander and barred tiger salamanders (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2017), as described under *Population Trends* above. Hybridization between native and exotic taxa, due to lack of reproductive isolation, can threaten native taxa by causing genetic swamping and reduced genetic diversity of native populations. In rare species such as California tiger salamander, hybridization can also lead to population extirpation. In a study of tiger salamander hybridization conducted in the Salinas Valley, Riley et al. (2003) found that the degree of genetic mixing between native and nonnative salamander depended on breeding habitat type. In artificial ponds, there appeared to be no barriers to gene exchange; however, in vernal pools, significantly fewer hybrid genotypes and more pure parental genotypes were found. These results suggest that the potential for reproductive isolation between the two taxa may be higher in native habitats (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2017).

The introduction of bullfrogs, Louisiana red swamp crayfish, and nonnative fishes (mosquitofish, bass, and sunfish) into aquatic habitats has also contributed to declines in tiger salamander populations (Jennings and Hayes 1994; U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2000). These nonnative species prey on tiger salamander larvae and may eliminate larval populations from breeding sites (Jennings and Hayes 1994). At sites where aquatic vegetation is present, predation by exotic fish appears more likely to result in California tiger salamander extirpation than bullfrogs (Fisher and Shaffer 1996). Burrowing-mammal control programs are considered a threat to California tiger salamander populations. Rodent control through destruction of burrows and release of toxic chemicals into burrows can cause direct mortality to individual salamanders and may result in a decrease of available suitable habitat (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2000). Vehicular-related mortality is an important threat to California tiger salamander populations (Barry and Shaffer 1994; Jennings and Hayes 1994). California tiger salamanders readily attempt to cross roads during migration, and roads that sustain heavy vehicle traffic or barriers that impede seasonal migrations may have impacted tiger salamander populations in some areas (Shaffer and Stanley 1992 in Jennings and Hayes 1992; Barry and Shaffer 1994). Therefore, establishing artificial barriers to movement or maintaining roads that support a considerable amount of vehicle traffic in areas that support California tiger salamander populations could severely degrade salamander habitat (Jennings and Hayes 1994).

F4.1.8 Recovery Planning

F4.1.8.1 State

The California tiger salamander recovery plan was authored in 2017 by USFWS. The three objectives of the recovery plan are to permanently protect habitat of self-sustaining populations of Central California tiger salamanders through the full range of the DPS, ameliorate or eliminate threats to the species, and restore or conserve a healthy ecosystem supportive of Central California tiger salamander populations. Recovery of this species can be achieved by addressing the conservation of remaining aquatic and upland habitat that provides essential connectivity, reducing fragmentation, and sufficiently buffers against encroaching development and intensive agricultural land uses. The recovery plan identifies 4 recovery units and 27 management areas; each recovery unit specifically prescribes the number of preserves necessary to recover the species. The recovery plan also defines the minimum preserve size as 3,398 acres with at least four ponds (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2017).

F4.1.8.2 Study Area

The Central Coast Range Recovery Unit contains the following management units: Fort Ord, Carmel Valley, and Salinas Valley which overlap the study area. Within the three management units the goal is to protect nine preserves that total 30,583 acres (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2017). The recovery plan (2017) states that most populations are not protected and have not been monitored for status and trends. Maintaining the native genetic integrity of Central California tiger salamanders within this recovery unit is a priority.

F4.1.9 Existing Conservation Actions in the Study Area

As noted in Section F3, *California Red-Legged Frog*, ESNERR is a concentration of protected lands to the north of the Salinas River Lagoon. ESNERR is a federal reserve where research and management focus on understanding and protecting ecosystem function and rare species habitat. In addition, there are several properties to the north, east, and south of the reserve that are also protected and managed to benefit ecosystem function. Freshwater restoration efforts target California tiger salamander, California red-legged frog, western pond turtle, and the Santa Cruz long-toed salamander.

To the south of the Salinas River lagoon, near the city of Seaside, the Fort Ord Reuse Authority is currently working on the FOHCP. Once established, the FOHCP will protect and manage a portion of lands within the former base at Fort Ord to benefit native flora and fauna, particularly the rare and endangered species that occur within the planning area including the California red-legged frog and California tiger salamander. However, even before the inception of the FOHCP, BLM has monitored the California tiger salamander on the Fort Ord National Monument (Fort Ord) to identify which resources are occupied by California tiger salamanders and/or nonnative salamanders. Genetic sampling efforts carried out by BLM and the Schaffer lab indicate that most ponds show some trace of nonnative genes. To date, the Fort Ord region is positioned at the northernmost edge of the hybrid swarm and the southernmost edge for the super-invasive only population.

As stated above under *Population Trends*, the hybrid tiger salamanders on Fort Hunter Liggett are considered a threat to native California tiger salamanders. There are no known native populations of tiger salamander on or adjacent to Fort Hunter Liggett, and eradication efforts would be resource intensive with unknown costs, effectiveness, and benefit. The current goal in the Fort Hunter Liggett Integrated Natural Resources Management Plan (INRMP) and Endangered Species Management Plan (ESMP) is to determine the cost and value of eradicating hybrid or nonnative tiger salamanders; this would provide valuable information for sites that have encroachment of nonnative tiger salamanders into native territories as well as for Fort Hunter Liggett (U.S. Army Garrison Fort Hunter Liggett 2012).

F4.1.10 Literature Cited

Alvarez, J. A., M. A. Shea, J. T. Wilcox, M. L. Allaback, S. M. Foster, G. E. Padgett-Flohr, and J. L. Haire. 2013. Sympatry in California tiger salamander and California red-legged frog breeding habitat within their overlapping range. California Fish and Game 99(1):42-48.

Barry, S. J., and H. B. Shaffer. 1994. The Status of the California Tiger Salamander (*Ambystoma californiense*) at Lagunita: A 50-Year Update. Journal of Herpetology 28:159–164.

California Department of Fish and Game. 2010. Report to the Fish and Game Commission: Status Review of the California Tiger Salamander (*Ambystoma californiense*). January 11.

California Department of Fish and Wildlife. 2018. California Natural Diversity Database. Rare Find 5 Version 5.2.14. (June 2018). Sacramento, CA: California Department of Fish and Wildlife.

Feaver, P. E. 1971. Breeding Pool Selection and Larval Mortality of Three California Amphibians: *Ambystoma tigrinum californiense* Gray, Hyla regilla Baird and Girard, and *Scaphiopus hammondii* Girard. Master's thesis. Fresno State College. Fresno, CA.

Fisher, R. N., and H. B. Shaffer. 1996. The Decline of Amphibians in California's Great Central Valley. Conservation Biology 10:1,387–1,397.

Fitzpatrick, B.M., and H.B. Shaffer. 2007. Introduction history and habitat variation explain the landscape genetics of hybrid tiger salamanders. Ecological Applications 17:598–608.

Ford. L. D., P. Van Hoorn, D. R. Rao, N. J. Scott, P. C. Trenham, and J. W. Bartolome. 2013. Managing Rangelands to Benefit the California Red-Legged Frog and California Tiger Salamander. Livermore, CA: Alameda County Resource Conservation District.

Holland, D. C., M. P. Hayes, and E. McMillan. 1990. Late Summer Movement and Mass Mortality in the California Tiger Salamander (*Ambystoma californiense*). Southwestern Naturalist 35:217–220.

Irschick, D. J., and H. B. Shaffer. 1997. The Polytypic Species Revisited: Morphological Differentiation among Tiger Salamanders (*Ambystoma tigrinum*) (Amphibia: Caudata). Herpetologica 53:30–49.

Jennings, M. R., and M. P. Hayes. 1994. *Amphibian and Reptile Species of Special Concern in California*. Prepared for the California Department of Fish and Game, Inland Fisheries Division, Rancho Cordova, CA.

Loredo, I., D. Van Vuren, and M. L. Morrison. 1996. Habitat Use and Migration Behavior of the California Tiger Salamander. Journal of Herpetology 30:282–285.

Orloff, S. G. 2011. Movement patterns and migration distances in an upland population of California tiger salamander (*Ambystoma californiense*). Herpetological Conservation and Biology 6(2):266–276.

Riley, S. P. D., H. B. Shaffer, R. Voss, and B. M. Fitzpatrick. 2003. Hybridization between a Rare, Native Tiger Salamander (*Ambystoma californiense*) and Its Introduced Congener. Ecological Applications 13:1,263–1,275.

Shaffer, H. B., G. B. Pauly, J. C. Oliver, and P. C. Trenham. 2004. The Molecular Phylogenetics of Endangerment: Cryptic Variation and Historical Phylogeography of the California tiger salamander, *Ambystoma californiense*. Molecular Ecology 13:3,033–3,

Shaffer, H. B., J. Johnson, and I. Wang. 2013. Conservation Genetics of California Tiger Salamanders. Final report. Prepared for Dan Strait, CVP Conservation Program Manager, Bureau of Reclamation, Sacramento, CA. Bureau of Reclamation grant agreement no. R10AP20598.

Shaffer, H.B. and P.C. Trenham. 2005. *Ambystoma californiense*. Pages 1093– 1102 in M.J. Lannoo (ed.), Status and Conservation of U.S. Amphibians. Volume 2: Species Accounts. Berkeley, CA: University of California Press

Stebbins, R. C. 1972. California Amphibians and Reptiles. Pg. 152. Berkeley, CA: University of California Press.

Stebbins, R. C., and S. M. McGinnis*. 1985. Field Guide to Amphibians and Reptiles of California: Revised Edition (California Natural History Guides). University of California Press*, 2012.

Thomson, R. C., A. N. Wright, and H. B. Shaffer. 2016. California Amphibian and Reptile Species of Special Concern. University of California Press. Oakland. CA.

Trenham, P. C. 2001. Terrestrial Habitat Use by Adult California Tiger Salamanders. Journal of Herpetology 35:343–346.

Trenham, P. C., and H. B. Shaffer. 2005. Amphibian upland habitat use and its consequences for population viability. Ecological Applications 15:1158–1168.

Trenham, P. C., B. . Shaffer, W. D. Koenig, and M. R. Stromberg. 2000. Life History and Demographic Variation in the California Tiger Salamander (*Ambystoma californiense*). *Copeia*. May.

Trenham, P. C., W. D. Koenig, and H. B. Shaffer. 2001. Spatially autocorrelated demography and interpond dispersal in the salamander Ambystoma californiense. Ecology 82(12):3,519–3,530.

U.S. Army Garrison Fort Hunter Liggett. 2012. Integrated Natural Resources Management Plan/Environmental Assessment. October. Department of the Army. Fort Hunter Liggett, CA.

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. 2013. Endangered Species Facts; California Tiger Salamander. August. Available: https://www.epa.gov/sites/production/files/2013-08/documents/ca-tiger-salamander_0.pdf. Accessed: January 15, 2019.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 2017. Recovery Plan for the Central California Distinct Population Segment of the California Tiger Salamander (*Ambystoma californiense*). U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Pacific Southwest Region, Sacramento, CA. 69 pp.

Wang, I. J., W. K. Savage, and H. B. Shaffer. 2009. Landscape Genetics and Least-Cost Path Analysis Reveal Unexpected Dispersal Routes in the California Tiger Salamander (*Ambystoma californiense*). Molecular Ecology 18:1,365–1,374.

F5.1 Least Bell's Vireo (*Vireo bellii pusillus*)

F5.1.1 Legal Status

F5.1.1.1 State

Least Bell's vireo is listed as endangered under the CESA.

F5.1.1.2 Federal

Least Bell's vireo was federally listed as endangered in 1986 (51 FR 16474). Least Bell's vireo is also protected under the Migratory Bird Treaty Act.

F5.1.1.3 Critical Habitat

Critical habitat for the vireo was designated in 1994 and is located in southern California (59 FR 4845).

F5.1.2 Taxonomy

There are four recognized subspecies of Bell's vireo (*Vireo bellii*): the eastern Bell's vireo (*V. b. belli),* the Texas Bell's vireo (*V. b. medius*)*,* the Arizona Bell's vireo (*V. b. arizonae*)*,* and the least Bell's vireo (*V. b. pusillus*). Least Bell's vireo constitutes all of the breeding birds in California apart from those in the vicinity of the Colorado River, which are the Arizona Bell's vireo (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1998). The subspecies are isolated from one another during both the breeding and wintering seasons (Hamilton 1962). The first account of least Bell's vireo was written by J.G. Cooper based on two specimens collected near Manix in San Bernardino County, California (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1998).

F5.1.3 Description

While all subspecies are similar in appearance, least Bell's vireos are mostly gray above and pale below, while easternmost birds are greenish above and yellowish below. Southwestern subspecies are intermediate in plumage characteristics.

F5.1.4 Distribution

F5.1.4.1 State

Historical

The Bell's vireo is a small migratory species that breeds in North America and overwinters primarily along the Pacific Coast in southern Mexico (Brown 1993). Breeding range for Bell's vireo is from north central to southwestern United States and into central Mexico (Brown 1993). Breeding has been documented from southwestern California and northwestern Baja California, Mexico, to central South Dakota, east to Illinois and northwestern Indiana, south to the Gulf Coast and into southern Sonora, Mexico (Brown 1993). Historically the breeding range of this species was broad in California and included both inland and coastal populations ranging from Red Bluff in Tehama County and from Santa Clara County to Baja California, Mexico (Grinnell and Miller 1944; U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1998). By the early 1980s, least Bell's vireo was extirpated from the northern portion of its range. Extant populations remained in counties south of Santa Barbara, with the most abundant populations found in San Diego County (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1998).

Recent

Most breeding in California occurs in southwestern California and northwestern Baja California, Mexico (Brown 1993). Recently (2001) individuals have been reported during the breeding season as far north as Monterey County near San Juan Bautista (Roberson 2004; California Department of Fish and Wildlife 2018) and the San Joaquin Valley (U. S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2006), including Yolo County between 2010 and 2013 (California Department of Fish and Wildlife 2018). These sightings indicate this species may be expanding back into its historical range to the north of current populations.

F5.1.4.2 Study Area

In the study area, least Bell's vireo is a rare summer resident, occurring below 2,000 feet in willows (*Salix* spp.) and other valley foothill riparian habitat. Riparian vegetation communities within the study area provide moderate to highly suitable breeding, foraging, and cover habitat for least Bell's vireo. Sightings in recent years have been documented in southeastern Monterey County, but least Bell's vireo has not been observed in the Salinas River watershed since 1993 (McGraw and Boldero 2008).

F5.1.5 Natural History

F5.1.5.1 Habitat Requirements

Least Bell's vireo is an obligate riparian species which nest in California rose (*Rosa californica*), California grape (*Vitis californica*), poison oak (*Toxicodendron diversilobum*), giant creek nettle (*Urtica dioica L.* ssp*. holosericea*), and many other species, with an early-successional willow (Peterson et al. 2004) and Fremont's cottonwood (*Populus fremontii*) (Kus 2002) overstory. Suitable willow thickets are typically dense with well-defined vegetative strata or layers. The critical structural component of nesting habitat in California appears to be dense vegetation between 2 and 10 feet aboveground (Goldwasser 1981; Franzreb 1989; Brown 1993). According to USFWS (2001), the habitat elements essential for conservation of the taxon can be described as riparian woodland vegetation that generally contains both canopy and shrub layers and includes some associated upland habitats. Examples of suitable breeding habitat are broad cottonwood-willow woodlands with a dense shrubby understory and dense mule fat scrub. Most areas that support least Bell's vireo populations are areas where most woody vegetation is 5–10 years old (Gray and Greaves 1984; Franzreb 1989). Individuals occasionally forage and even nest in adjacent scrub or chaparral habitat. On its wintering grounds in southern Baja California, least Bell's vireo occurs primarily in mesquite scrub vegetation in arroyos (U. S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1998).

F5.1.5.2 Reproduction

Least Bell's vireos begin arriving on their breeding grounds in late March and begin nesting in early April (Kus 2002; Unitt 2004). Nesting is typically finished by the end of July (Kus 1999). Most pairs are monogamous during the breeding season (Brown 1993). Several factors may have an effect on breeding success, including development adjacent to riparian habitat, brown-headed cowbird *(Molothrus ater*) parasitism, and water management.

Female least Bell's vireos settle on male territories within 2 days of their arrival on the breeding grounds, and courtship begins immediately. In California, egg laying usually begins in April 1–2 days after nest construction is completed and lasts 4–5 days. Clutch size is usually 3–5 eggs; the mean clutch size of 196 California nests was 3.4 eggs (Franzreb 1989). Incubation begins once the first egg is laid and typically lasts 14 days.

Both sexes brood and feed the young, although females may brood more than males (Nolan 1960; Brown 1993). Young typically fledge 10–12 days after hatching. Therefore, the time to produce a successful brood is approximately 33–38 days. Most pairs in California produce one or two broods per season; however, up to four broods per season are occasionally produced (Franzreb 1989). When second broods are produced, a new nest is constructed immediately after the first brood has fledged or failed.

Many studies in California have reported the annual reproductive success of least Bell's vireos; in an area where the influence of brown-headed cowbird parasitism was manipulated, reproductive success ranged from 1.90 to 3.38 fledglings per breeding pair; however, where cowbirds were not manipulated, reproductive success ranged from 0.17 to 2.85 fledglings per breeding pair (Franzreb 1987).

F5.1.5.3 Movement

Least Bell's vireo is a neotropical migrant, leaving its breeding range in California to winter in Baja California, Mexico (Kus 2002). The species as a whole is known to be a nocturnal migrant (Brown 1993). Arrival of individuals in San Diego County ranges from mid-March to mid-April, with most departing from mid-August to late September (Unitt 2004). Least Bell's vireos exhibit strong territoriality. Males aggressively defend territories from neighboring birds by intensive singing or physical contact (Barlow 1962). Territories during the breeding season are mostly limited to areas within dense riparian corridors and are often linear in nature, following stream vegetation. Size of territories are dependent on the quality of breeding habitat available and the number of breeding individuals the area will support. Least Bell's vireo territory sizes vary considerably, and probably depend on habitat extent and quality, population density, and nesting stage. In California, reported territory sizes of least Bell's vireos are 0.5–4.0 acres (Gray and Greaves 1984) and 0.7–3.2 acres (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1998 and referenced therein) (Table F5-1).

In California, fledglings have been reported to disperse 1 mile from their natal site by the time a second brood was produced (Gray and Greaves 1984) (Table F5-1). At a California study site, 15% of 312 nestlings or fledglings banded between 1979 and 1983 returned to breed the next year (Greaves 1987). At the same site, 18% of 203 nestlings or fledglings banded between 1987 and 1990 returned to breed the next year (Greaves 1991). Adult least Bell's vireos often exhibit strong breeding site fidelity, and nest sites are sometimes located within 3.3 feet of the previous year's nest (Greaves 1987).

Table F5-1. Documented Least Bell's Vireo Movement

Type	Distance/Area	Location of Study	Reference
Home range	0.5–4 acres	California	Gray and Greaves 1984
	1.5 acres	California	Collins et al. 1986
Dispersal	1 mile	California	Gray and Greaves 1984
	100–200 feet on day 14	Southern Indiana	Nolan 1960
Migration	From breeding grounds in Pacific Coast to southern Mexico	North America	Brown 1993

F5.1.5.4 Ecological Relationships

This species is dependent on dense, early-successional riparian corridors along watercourses for successful breeding. Riparian scrub habitats adjacent to these watercourses are equally important to the success of the species because they provide foraging opportunities as well as protection for nesting habitat. Brown-headed cowbirds have decimated least Bell's vireo populations throughout its breeding range. Dense riparian breeding habitat that is surrounded by agricultural lands or developed areas, like that of the study area, will facilitate brown-headed cowbird persistence and lower the breeding success of riparian nesting species like the least Bell's vireo.

F5.1.6 Population Status and Trends

F5.1.6.1 Population Trend

State

By the time least Bell's vireo was federally listed in 1986, the statewide population was estimated at 300 pairs. In 1996, the population had increased to 1,346 (U. S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1998); in 2000, the population had increased to 2,000 pairs (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2001). The number of least Bell's vireo territories in 2005 was 2,968. The greatest population growth has been in San Diego and Riverside Counties, with smaller increases in Orange, Ventura, San Bernardino, and Los Angeles Counties and a sustained decrease in Santa Barbara County. The tremendous growth that most populations have experienced is attributed to an intensive brown-headed cowbird removal program that was initiated in some southern counties upon the listing of the species (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2006). In addition to an increase in population size, it appears that least Bell's vireos are expanding their range and recolonizing sites that have been unoccupied for years. As populations continue to grow and disperse northward, they are beginning to reestablish in the central and northern portions of their historical breeding range (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1998).

Study Area

The species was considered to be extirpated from Monterey County by around 1960, but three singing males were observed along the Salinas River near Bradley, upstream of the study area, in 1983; and in 1993, one singing male was observed near the same location (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1998). In addition, habitat and least Bell's Vireo surveys were conducted along the Salinas River between the Highway 1 Bridge and Bradley between 1996 and 2001 as a component of the

2003 to 2008 Regional General Permit for the Salinas River Cooperative Monitoring Program (CMP). No least Bell's vireos were observed during this period.

F5.1.7 Threats

Habitat loss and degradation and nest parasitism by brown-headed cowbirds are identified as the biggest threats to least Bell's vireo populations (U. S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1998). Brown-headed cowbirds increased in the least Bell's vireo's range starting around 1915, presumably due to anthropogenic effects (e.g., residential development, agriculture, or grazing), with a decline in least Bell's vireo individuals beginning in the mid-1920s (Grinnell and Miller 1944). Nest parasitism by brown-headed cowbirds has greatly reduced nest success throughout most of its breeding range. In fragmented habitats, adult and nest predation by other nonnative predators (e.g., domestic cats, opossums, or Argentine ants) is an increased risk (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2006). In the only formal study of nest predation on least Bell's vireo (Peterson et al. 2004), nearly half of predations were by the native California scrub-jay (*Aphelocoma californica*).

Least Bell's vireo habitat has decreased due to flood control, water impoundment and diversion, urban and rural development, agriculture and livestock grazing (U. S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2006). Riparian habitat connectivity has been improving along some major rivers in California, due to giant reed (*Arundo donax*) removal, restoration, and reductions in high impact activities (e.g. sand mining), but fragmentation is still occurring along lower order tributary streams due to urban development and flood control (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2006). However, riparian areas are often along edges of agricultural or urban areas; vireo territories along these habitats are less productive than those adjacent to native upland habitats (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2006).

F5.1.8 Recovery Planning

F5.1.8.1 State

According to the draft recovery plan for the least Bell's vireo (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1998), the strategy for recovery of this species will involve (1) brown-headed cowbird control, (2) riparian habitat creation and restoration, (3) nest monitoring to remove brown-headed cowbird eggs and to obtain population data, and (4) control of nonnative predators (e.g., cats, Argentine ants). Additional management tools are shown below (U. S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1998, 2006).

- Water management on rivers.
- Control of nonnative vegetation.
- Grazing restrictions in and adjacent to riparian habitats.
- Habitat acquisition and management in perpetuity.

F5.1.8.2 Study Area

There have been no recovery-planning efforts for least Bell's vireo in the Salinas River watershed or in Monterey County (Zefferman pers. comm. 2018). USFWS collected census data from volunteer surveys conducted between 1983 and 1984, and other least Bell's vireo sightings have been documented incidentally during surveys for other listed species (California Department of Fish and Wildlife 2018).

More recently (as described below under *Existing Conservation Actions in the Study Area*), a giant reed removal project began along the Salinas River in 2014 and is expected to benefit least Bell's vireo (Zefferman pers. comm. 2018). Focused least Bell's vireo surveys conducted from King City to Soledad along the length of the Salinas River in 2017 did not identify any individuals; however, habitat conditions were suitable for the species throughout the survey area, although the taller cottonwoods were dead (Colibri Ecological Consulting 2017). General nesting bird surveys conducted annually in the same region since 2014 have not documented any least Bell's vireo (Zefferman pers. comm. 2018).

F5.1.9 Existing Conservation Actions in the Study Area

Efforts to control invasive giant reed and tamarisk (*Tamarix* spp.) and restore riparian habitat in the Salinas River watershed are underway in Monterey County, and major efforts are administered by the Resource Conservation District of Monterey County and implemented through partnerships with state and local agencies as well and private land-owners and non-profit organizations (Resource Conservation District of Monterey County 2018).

F5.1.10 Literature Cited

Barlow, J. C. 1962. Natural History of the Bell's Vireo, *Vireo bellii*. Audubon. *University of Kansas Publication* 12:241–296.

Brown, B. T. 1993. Bell's Vireo (*Vireo belli*). In A. Poole and F. Gill (eds.). The Birds of North America. No. 35. The Academy of Natural Sciences, Philadelphia, PA, and The American Ornithologists' Union, Washington, DC.

California Department of Fish and Wildlife 2018. California Natural Diversity Database. Rare Find 5 Version 5.2.14. June. Sacramento, CA: California Department of Fish and Wildlife.

Colibri Ecological Consulting. 2017. Least Bell's Vireo Survey Report. August. Fresno, CA. Prepared for Resource Conservation District of Monterey County. Salinas, CA.

Collins, C. T., L. R. Hays, and M. Wheeler. 1986. The Status and Management of the Least Bell's Vireo within the Prado Basin, California, during 1986. California State University, Long Beach Foundation, Long Beach. 31 pp. Unpubl. Rep.

Franzreb, K. E. 1987. Endangered Status and Strategies for Conservation of Least Bell's Vireo (*Vireo bellii pusillus*) in California. *Western Birds* 18:43–49.

Franzreb, K. E. 1989. Ecology and Conservation of the Endangered Least Bell's Vireo. Biological Report 89. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Washington, DC.

Goldwasser, S. 1981. Habitat Requirements of the Least Bell's Vireo. Final Report. California Department of Fish and Game, Sacramento, CA:

Gray, M. V., and J. M. Greaves. 1984. Riparian Forest as Habitat for the Least Bell's Vireo. Pages 605–611 in R. Warner and K. Hendrix (eds.), California Riparian Systems: Ecology, Conservation, and Productive Management. Davis, CA: University of California Press.

Greaves, J. M. 1987. Nest-Site Tenacity of Least Bell's Vireos. Western Birds 18:50–54.

Greaves, J. 1991. Least Bell's Vireo Monitoring and Brown-Headed Cowbird Control in the Gibraltar Reservoir Area, Santa Barbara County, California, during 1991. Prepared for U.S. Forest Service.

Grinnell, J., and A. H. Miller. 1944. The Distribution of the Birds of California. Pacific Coast Avifauna 27.

Hamilton, T. 1962. Species Relationships and Adaptations for Sympatry in the Avian Genus Viero. Condor 64:40–68.

Kus, B. E. 1999. Impacts of Brown-Headed Cowbird Parasitism on Productivity of the Endangered Least Bell's Vireo. Studies in Avian Biology 18:160–166.

Kus, B. E. 2002. Least Bell's Vireo (*Vireo bellii pusillus*). In California Partners in Flight: The Riparian Bird Conservation Plan: A Strategy for Reversing the Decline of Riparian-Associated Birds in California. Available: http://www.prbo.org/calpif/htmldocs/riparian_v-2.html. Accessed: April 7, 2006.

McGraw, J., and C. Boldero. 2008. Rapid Biological Resource Assessment for the Salinas River, Monterey County, California. Prepared for: The Nature Conservancy, San Francisco, CA. Available: http://www.co.monterey.ca.us/home/showdocument?id=22459. Accessed: January 15, 2019.

Nolan, V. 1960. Breeding Behavior of the Bell Vireo in Southern Indiana. *Condor* 62:225–244.

Peterson, B. L., B. E. Kus, and D. H. Deutschman. 2004. Determining Nest Predators of the Least Bell's Vireo through Point Counts, Tracking Stations, and Video Photography. Journal of Field Ornithology 75(1):89–95.

Resource Conservation District of Monterey County. 2018. Salinas River Watershed. Available: https://www.rcdmonterey.org/salinas-river. Accessed: January 14, 2018.

Roberson, Don. 2004. The Monterey County List—Annotated Checklist and Data Resource. Available: http://montereybay.com/creagrus/MTYbirdlistportal.html. Accessed: January 14, 2019. Last updated: March 5, 2004.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 1998. Draft Recovery Plan for the Least Bell's Vireo. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Portland, OR. 139 pp.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 2001. Least Bell's Vireo Survey Guidelines. January. USFWS Ecological Services, Carlsbad Fish and Wildlife office.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 2006. Least Bell's Vireo (*Vireo bellii pusillus*) 5-Year Review Summary and Evaluation. September. Carlsbad Fish and Wildlife Office, Carlsbad, CA.

Unitt, P. 2004. San Diego County Bird Atlas. Proceedings of the San Diego Society of Natural History, No. 39. San Diego, CA: San Diego Natural History Museum. Available: https://www.sdnhm.org/science/publications/proceedings. Accessed: January 14, 2019.

Personal Communications

Zefferman, E. 2018. Ecologist. Resource Conservation District of Monterey County. Least Bell's Vireo. Email to Torrey Edell—Biologist. ICF. July 23.

Appendix F6
Western Snowy Plover Species Account

F6.1 Western Snowy Plover (*Charadrius alexandrinus nivosus)*

F6.1.1 Legal Status

F6.1.1.1 State

Western snowy plover is identified as a Species of Special Concern.

F6.1.1.2 Federal

The Pacific Coast population of western snowy plover was listed as federally threatened on March 5, 1993 (58 FR 12864). It is also protected under the Migratory Bird Treaty Act.

F6.1.1.3 Critical Habitat

Critical habitat was designated on June 19, 2012 (77 FR 36728). The closest critical habitat unit is in Elkhorn Slough, just north of the study area.

F6.1.2 Taxonomy

Two subspecies of snowy plover are recognized in North America: the western snowy plover (*Charadrius alexandrinus nivosus*) and the Cuban snowy plover (*C. a. tenuirostri*). The Cuban snowy plover breeds along the gulf coast south to the Caribbean (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2007). The western snowy plover is a small shorebird native to North America in the family Charadriidae and consists of Pacific coastal and interior populations. Breeding data indicate that the Pacific coast population of western snowy plover are distinct from the population in the interior (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2007). The Pacific Coast population was listed as threatened under the ESA in 1993 with the listed population defined as “those individuals that nest within 50 miles of the Pacific Ocean on the mainland coast, peninsulas, offshore islands, bays, estuaries, or rivers of the United States and Baja California, Mexico.”

F6.1.3 Description

Western snowy plover is a small shorebird that is approximately 5.9–6.6 inches long. The plover’s body is pale-gray brown above and white below, with a white hindneck collar. The bill and legs are blackish. In breeding plumage, the males have black markings and the females have dark brown markings on the head and breast (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2007).

F6.1.4 Distribution

F6.1.4.1 State

Historical

Historically found along the entire California coast, western snowy plover was once more widely distributed and abundant throughout its range, especially in southern California (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2007).

Recent

The current Pacific Coast breeding range of the western snowy plover extends from Damon Point, Washington, to Bahia Magdelena, Baja California, Mexico. The population is sparse in Washington, Oregon, and northern California. In 2006, estimated populations were 2,231 adults in coastal California and San Francisco Bay (71 FR 20,607–20,624). Eight geographic areas support over three-quarters of the California coastal breeding population: San Francisco Bay, Monterey Bay, Morro Bay, the Callendar Mussel Rock Dunes area, the Point Sal to Point Conception area, the Oxnard lowland, Santa Rosa Island, and San Nicolas Island (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2007).

F6.1.4.2 Study Area

The study area includes 11 western snowy plover nesting areas spanning the length of the coast between Moss Landing and Sand City, which include the Salinas River National Wildlife Refuge and the Salinas River State Beach. These nesting sites are managed and monitored by the CDFW and/or USFWS.

F6.1.5 Natural History

F6.1.5.1 Habitat Requirements

Sparsely-vegetated sandy beaches and dunes, beaches at river and creek mouths, and salt pans at estuaries and lagoons provide the primary coastal nesting habitat for western snowy plover. Less commonly used nesting habitats include bluff-backed beaches, dredged material disposal sites, salt pond levees, dry salt ponds, and gravel bars (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2007). Driftwood, kelp, and dune plants provide cover for chicks that crouch near objects to hide from predators. Invertebrates are often found near debris, so driftwood and kelp are also important for harboring western snowy plover food sources (Page et al. 2009).

F6.1.5.2 Reproduction

Breeding and nesting occurs March through September, and nests are found above the high tide line on sandy, open ground. Nests consist of a shallow scrape or depression, sometimes lined with beach debris (e.g., small pebbles, shell fragments, plant debris, and mud chips); nest lining increases as incubation progresses. They are monogamous by clutch and can have multiple clutches per year with two to six eggs per clutch. Both the male and female incubate the eggs. The young are precocial and will leave the nest within hours of hatching in search of food. Fledging is reached at approximately 1 month after hatching but the young will rarely remain in the nesting territory until fledging. Typically, males will continue to care for and feed the young while the female initiates a new nest. Western snowy plovers are highly sensitive to disturbance and may abandon their nests if disturbed (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2007). Western snowy plovers maintain high site fidelity, returning to the same area to breed year after year.

F6.1.5.3 Movement

Some coastal populations of western snowy plovers remain in their breeding sites year-round, while others migrate north or south for the winter where they winter in coastal areas from southern Washington to Central America. The migrants vacate California coastal nesting areas primarily from late June to late October (Page et al. 2009). For those that remain, the majority concentrate on sand spits and dune-backed beaches. In winter, western snowy plovers are found on many of the beaches used for nesting, as well as some beaches where they do not nest. They also occur in human-made salt ponds and on estuarine sand and mud flats (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2007).

Most western snowy plovers that nest inland migrate to the coast for the winter (Page et al. 2009). Thus, the flocks of non-breeding birds that begin forming along the U.S. Pacific Coast in early July are a mixture of adult and hatching-year birds from both coastal and interior nesting areas (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2007).

F6.1.5.4 Ecological Relationships

Western snowy plovers forage on aquatic and terrestrial invertebrates in wet sand and wrack in the intertidal zone, in dry sand above the high tide line, on slat pans, spoil sites, and along the edges of lagoons, salt marshes, and salt ponds and occasionally glean insects from low growing vegetation. They have also been observed foraging in shallow water and foraging for flying insects (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2007). Thus, the presence of kelp, stagnant water, or other insect-attractants along the coastline provide the western snowy plover with an important source of insect prey.

F6.1.6 Population Status and Trends

F6.1.6.1 Population Trend

State

By the late 1970s, nesting western snowy plovers were absent from 33 of 53 locations with breeding records prior to 1970 (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2007). An estimated 1,593 adult western snowy plovers were seen during pioneer surveys. Western snowy plover populations in California have fluctuated between roughly 1,000 and 2,000 birds over the past 30 years. By 2000, populations had declined further to 71% of the late 1970s levels along the California coast (U.S Fish and Wildlife Service 2007).

Study Area

In the Monterey Bay region, the number of western snowy plovers is on the rise, and in 2017 there were an estimated 403 snowy plovers, which was a decrease from several previous years but an overall increase from 146 in 1999. The yearly average productivity in 2017 was 1.33 fledged chick per male (Neuman et al. 2018).

F6.1.7 Threats

Threats to western snowy plover include habitat degradation caused by human disturbance, urban development, introduced beachgrass (*Ammophila spp.),* and expanding predator populations including ravens and skunks (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2007).

F6.1.8 Recovery Planning

F6.1.8.1 State

According to the 2007 USFWS recovery plan for the western snowy plover, the plan's objective is to remove the Pacific coast population of the western snowy plover from the List of Endangered and Threatened Wildlife and Plants by (1) increasing population numbers distributed across the range of the Pacific coast population of the western snowy plover; (2) conducting intensive ongoing management for the species and its habitat and developing mechanisms to ensure management in perpetuity; and (3) monitoring western snowy plover populations and threats to determine success of recovery actions and refine management actions.

The Pacific coast population will be considered for delisting when the following criteria have been met (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2007).

- An average of 3,000 breeding adults has been maintained for 10 years.
- An average productivity of at least one fledged chick per male has been maintained in each recovery unit in the last 5 years prior to delisting.

Mechanisms are in place to ensure long-term protection and management of breeding, wintering, and migration areas to maintain the population size and productivity noted above.

F6.1.8.2 Study Area

To recover the species, the Sonoma to Monterey County recovery unit, which includes the study area, must maintain 400 breeding adults for 10 years (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2007), as well as one fledged chick per male for 5 years.

F6.1.9 Existing Conservation Actions in the Study Area

There are a number of ongoing conservation actions that occur on federal and state land in the study area, including the following (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2007).

- Exclosures and fencing.
- Law enforcement.
- Predator control.
- European beachgrass control.
- Annual population monitoring.
- Public education and outreach.
- Section 6 cooperative agreements.

In addition to the conservation actions listed above, a snowy plover rehabilitation program has been operating since 2000 at the Monterey Bay Aquarium (Monterey Bay Aquarium 2018) where egg incubation, bird rearing, rehabilitation, and banding take place. In addition, other groups are implementing habitat restoration and invasive plant removals to enhance and restore snowy plover habitat.

F6.1.10 Literature Cited

Neuman, K. K., J. C. Warriner, C. Eyster, D. Dixon, R. Will Stein, E. Haile, A. Palkovic, and L. E. Stenzel. 2018. Reproductive Success and Breeding Population Size of Snowy Plovers in the Monterey Bay Region, California, in 2017. Point Blue Conservation Science.

Monterey Bay Aquarium. 2018. Western Snowy Plover. Available at: https://www.montereybayaquarium.org/animals-and-exhibits/animal-guide/birds/western-snowy-plover. Accessed: January 14, 2019.

Page, G. W., J. S. Warriner, J. C. Warriner, and P. W. C. Paton. 2009. Snowy plover (*Charadrius alexandrinus*). In A. Poole and F. Gill (eds.). The Birds of North America. No. 154. Version 2. The Academy of Natural Sciences, Philadelphia, PA, and The American Ornithologists' Union, Washington, DC. 24 pp.

U.S Fish and Wildlife Service. 2007. Recovery Plan for the Pacific Coast Population of the Western Snowy Plover (*Charadrius alexandrinus nivosus*). August. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Sacramento, CA.

Appendix F7
San Joaquin Kit Fox Species Account

F7.1 San Joaquin Kit Fox (*Vulpes macrotis mutica)*

F7.1.1 Legal Status

F7.1.1.1 State

San Joaquin kit fox is listed as threatened under the CESA.

F7.1.1.2 Federal

San Joaquin kit fox was listed as federally endangered in 1967 (32 FR 4001). Critical habitat has not been designated for San Joaquin kit fox.

F7.1.2 Taxonomy

The San Joaquin kit fox is a subspecies of the kit fox (*Vulpes macrotis*), the smallest member of the dog family in North America. Though there has been some debate as to the taxonomic relationship among North American arid land foxes, the San Joaquin kit fox remains a distinct subspecies due to its limited range in California. Descriptions of the species' physical characteristics can be found in U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (1998).

F7.1.3 Description

San Joaquin kit fox is the largest subspecies of kit fox in terms of skeletal measurements, body size, and weight; males average 31.7 inches, and females average 30.3 inches. The average weight of adults is between 4.6 and 5 pounds. Kit foxes have a small, slim body; large ears set close together, and a long, bushy tail which tapers at the tip. The coloration of their coat varies but typically they are buff, tan, grizzled, or yellow-gray. The tail is distinctly black tipped (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1998).

F7.1.4 Distribution

F7.1.4.1 Statewide

Historical

Historically, San Joaquin kit fox ranged throughout most of San Joaquin Central Valley from southern Kern County north to Tracy, San Joaquin County, on the west side, and near La Grange, Stanislaus County, on the east side.

Recent

Currently, the entire range of the kit fox appears to be similar to what it was at the time of USFWS's 1998 *Recovery Plan for Upland Species of the San Joaquin Valley*; however, population structure has become more fragmented, at least some of the resident satellite subpopulations are frequented by dispersers rather than resident animals (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2010). San Joaquin kit foxes occur in some areas of suitable habitat on the floor of the San Joaquin Valley and in the surrounding foothills of the Coast Ranges, Sierra Nevada, and Tehachapi Mountains from Kern County north to Contra Costa, Alameda, and San Joaquin Counties (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1998). There are known occurrences in Alameda, Contra Costa, Fresno, Kern, Kings, Madera, Merced, Monterey, San Benito, San Joaquin, San Luis Obispo, Santa Barbara, Santa Clara, Stanislaus, and Tulare Counties (California Department of Fish and Wildlife 2018). The largest extant populations of kit fox are in Kern County (Elk Hills and Buena Vista Valley) and San Luis Obispo County in the Carrizo Plain Natural Area (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1998).

F7.1.4.2 Study Area

Extant

San Joaquin kit fox may be extirpated from San Joaquin County (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2010). Past occurrences are concentrated along the Salinas Valley from Soledad southward and at Camp Roberts at the southern end of the study area, in addition to few occurrences documented in Fort Hunter Liggett (California Department of Fish and Wildlife 2018). USFWS considers the population at Fort Hunter Liggett to be extirpated (but with occasional sightings of presumed dispersers) and the population at Camp Roberts to be potentially extirpated (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2010).

F7.1.5 Natural History

F7.1.5.1 Habitat Requirements

San Joaquin kit foxes favor shrublands and grasslands in dry arid climates and will also occupy areas with low to moderate oil and gas production activities and urban areas. Use of agricultural lands is limited to occasional foraging in irrigated crops and orchards, but only when such lands are adjacent to natural habitat. Kit foxes prefer habitats with well-drained sandy to loamy soils, which support their preferred prey (kangaroo rats) and allow for the excavation of dens (Cypher et al. 2012). Dens are generally located in open areas with grass or grass and scattered brush, and seldom occur in areas with thick brush. Preferred sites are located in relatively flat and well-drained terrain (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1998; Roderick and Mathews 1999). They are seldom found in areas with shallow soils due to high water tables (McCue and O'Farrell 1981) or impenetrable bedrock or hardpan layers (O'Farrell and Gilbertson 1979). However, kit foxes may occupy soils with a high clay content where they can modify burrows dug by other animals, such as California ground squirrels (*Spermophilus beecheyi*), kangaroo rats, and badgers (Orloff et al. 1986; Cypher et al. 2012).

F7.1.5.2 Reproduction

Kit foxes can, but do not necessarily, breed their first year. Sometime between January and late March, one to six pups are born per litter, with an average of four (Cypher et al. 2012). The annual reproductive success for adults can range widely but is generally below 60% (Cypher et al. 2012);

immature reproductive success ranges between 14 and 21% (Clark et al. 2007). Kit fox pups emerge from dens at approximately 1 month of age and some disperse after 4–5 months, usually between July and September. The mean age of dispersal is 8 months and typically begins in June and peaks in July (Cypher et al. 2012).

Reproductive success is strongly influenced by food availability (Cypher et al. 2012). Population growth rates generally vary positively with reproductive success and kit fox density is often positively related to both current and the previous year's prey availability (Cypher et al. 2014). Prey abundance is generally strongly related to the previous year's effective (October to May) precipitation, which influences seed production for granivorous rodents (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2010).

F7.1.5.3 Movement

Kit foxes may range up to 20 miles at night during the breeding season and somewhat less (6 miles) during the pup-rearing season (Koopman et al. 2000). The species can readily navigate a matrix of land use types. Home ranges vary from less than 1 square mile up to approximately 12 square miles (Knapp 1978; Spiegel and Bradbury 1992; White and Ralls 1993). The home ranges of pairs or family groups of kit foxes generally do not overlap (White and Ralls 1993). This behavior may be an adaptation to periodic drought-induced scarcity in prey abundance.

F7.1.5.4 Ecological Relationships

San Joaquin kit foxes prey upon a variety of small mammals, ground-nesting birds, and insects. They are in turn subject to predation by such species as coyote, nonnative red foxes, domestic dog, eagles, and large hawks (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency 2013). Standley and others (1992) determined that coyotes were responsible for 45.8% of kit fox deaths (11 of 24 individuals) during a 3-year study at Camp Roberts in southern Monterey County.

F7.1.6 Population Status and Trends

F7.1.6.1 Population Trend

State

In the 1983 recovery plan (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1983), O'Farrell estimated that the range-wide population of adult kit fox prior to 1930 may have been between 8,667 and 12,134 animals, assuming an occupied range of 8,667 square miles, and assuming densities of 1.04 to 1.55 adult kit fox per square mile. Previously (1969–1975) various biologists had provided estimates of the total kit fox population that varied between 1,000 and 14,800 (Morrell 1975 in U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1983). In the 1983 recovery plan, O'Farrell adjusted Morrell's estimates to account for agricultural lands and provided a corrected population estimate for 1975 of 6,961 adult kit fox. When compared to the pre-1930 estimate, the change represented a possible population decline of 20–43%(U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1983).

Relatively recent population estimates are only available for the National Petroleum Reserves in California (NPRC) and the Carrizo Plain National Monument. Surveys on the 77,000-acre NPRC in western Kern County provided population estimates that ranged from 262 down to 74 in the period from 1981 to 1983 (Harris 1987 in U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2010), and that fluctuated between

46 and 363 adults from 1983 to 1995 (Warrick and Harris 2001 in U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2010). The only estimate for the Carrizo Plain provides is a population size of between 251 and 610 individuals, although the estimate may be high (Bean and White 2000 in U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2010). The Carrizo Plain is thought to have the largest kit fox population remaining in California (Carrizo Plains Conservancy 2018).

Study Area

Spatial distribution of the kit fox has become increasingly fragmented since listing. San Joaquin kit fox populations within the study area are considered to be satellite populations, which are areas that contain lower quality or more fragmented habitat and small or even intermittently present populations (Cypher et al. 2014). A total of 54 occurrences of San Joaquin kit fox have been documented in the study area since 1971 (California Department of Fish and Wildlife 2018). Although survey efforts have likely varied over the years in some areas, kit fox sightings have declined in areas with ongoing surveys; 30 of the 54 occurrence records in the study area were documented between 1970 and 1990 (California Department of Fish and Wildlife 2018). San Joaquin kit foxes have not been observed in the study area since 2007 and are considered potentially extirpated (California Department of Fish and Wildlife 2018).

F7.1.7 Threats

Habitat loss, fragmentation, and degradation from agricultural, urban, and industrial development continue to be the primary threats to San Joaquin kit fox throughout its range. Livestock grazing is not thought to be detrimental to kit foxes (Orloff et al. 1986; U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2010), but it may affect the number of prey species available, depending on the intensity of grazing (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1998). In some areas, livestock grazing may benefit kit foxes by reducing shrub cover and maintaining grassland habitat.

F7.1.8 Recovery Planning

F7.1.8.1 Statewide

USFWS approved a federal recovery plan for the San Joaquin kit fox in 1983, and in 1998 it approved an updated multi-species recovery plan that includes the San Joaquin kit fox. The goal of the 1998 recovery plan for San Joaquin kit fox is to work towards the establishment of a viable complex kit fox population on private and public lands throughout its historic range. Conserving a number of populations of various sizes in strategic locations will be a necessary foundation for recovery. The recovery strategy for San Joaquin kit fox hinges on the protection and management of three geographically-distinct populations in the Carrizo Plains National Monument in San Luis Obispo County, natural lands of western Kern County, and the Ciervo-Panoche Natural Area of western Fresno and eastern San Benito Counties (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1998). USFWS (1998) also states that in addition to land retirement and habitat restoration and management, research is also another important component of the recovery plan for San Joaquin kit fox. Habitat acquisition, large-scale habitat surveys, research into the ecology of the kit fox population, and public education have occurred for the recovery of San Joaquin kit fox since the time of its listing as endangered (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1998).

F7.1.8.2 Study Area

Mitigation in the form of management and research was granted to both the Army National Guard (Camp Roberts) and Department of Defense (Fort Hunter Liggett) within the study area (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1998).

Fort Hunter Liggett has an INRMP to manage natural resources within the army base to mitigate negative impact and enhance positive effects on the regional ecosystems, which includes an ESMP for San Joaquin kit fox. The goals of the INRMP and ESMP are to implement a San Joaquin kit fox management plan that (1) minimizes the potential for take of kit foxes while allowing the Fort Hunter Liggett base operations and military training to meet current and future mission standards and (2) establishes a protocol for monitoring for presence of kit foxes and red foxes on Fort Hunter Liggett (U.S. Army Garrison Fort Hunter Liggett 2012).

EG&G Energy Measurements has conducted research on San Joaquin kit fox on Camp Roberts for over 20 years. Reproduction (Spencer et al. 1992) and mortality (Standley et al. 1992) are two examples of studies that have been performed within Camp Roberts to further the goal of additional ecological research for kit fox in the USFWS recovery plan.

F7.1.9 Existing Conservation Actions in the Study Area

The INRMP and ESMP include the following current actions that take place on the Fort Hunter Liggett for San Joaquin kit fox (U.S. Army Garrison Fort Hunter Liggett 2012).

- Monitor predator indices of abundance in kit fox habitat biannually by means of night-time spotlighting and scent stations.
- If a kit fox is sighted within the past 12 months, conduct pre-activity surveys prior to ground-disturbing activities in the valley in which the sighting occurred.
- Conduct pre-activity surveys prior to poisoning of ground squirrels.
- Annually monitor artificial kit fox dens.
- Update GIS data for kit fox and red fox observations.
- Manage vegetation by implementing yellow-star thistle control and conducting prescribed burns.

Spotlight and scent station surveys have been conducted two or three times per year since 1998. Pre-activity surveys are regularly conducted prior to construction or use of rodenticide in potential habitat; however, no San Joaquin kit fox dens have been found (U.S. Army Garrison Fort Hunter Liggett 2012).

The INRMP also includes a list of future actions.

- Keep abreast of many factors affecting satellite populations of San Joaquin kit fox by attending local resource agency meetings and coordinating with USFWS, and adapt management and monitoring as needed to address new information (U.S. Army Garrison Fort Hunter Liggett 2012).

F7.1.10 Literature Cited

California Department of Fish and Wildlife. 2018. California Natural Diversity Database, RareFind 5. San Joaquin kit fox.

Carrizo Plains Conservancy. 2018. Landscape Linkages Cruical for Large Mammals. Available: http://carrizoplainconservancy.org/. Accessed: January 15, 2019.

Clark, H., Jr., R. R. Duke, M. C. Orland, R. T. Golightly, and S. I. Hagen. 2007. The San Joaquin Kit Fox in North-Central California: A Review. Transactions of the Western Section of The Wildlife Society 43:27–36.

Cypher, B., C. L. Van Horn, S. Phillips. 2012. Conservation Strategies for San Joaquin Kit Foxes in Urban Areas. Final Report. California State University, Stanislaus. Endangered Species Recovery Program. Prepared for the California Department of Fish and Wildlife. February.

Cypher, B. L., T. L. Westall. C. L. Van Horn Job, E. C. Kelly. 2014. San Joaquin Kit Fox Conservation in a Satellite Habitat Area. Final. California State University, Stanislaus. Endangered Species Recovery Program. Prepared for the U.S. Bureau of Reclamation. January.

Knapp, D. K. 1978. Effects of Agricultural Development in Kern County, California, on the San Joaquin Kit Fox in 1977. Final Report. Project E-1-1, Job V-1.21, Non-Game Wildlife Investigations, California Department of Fish and Game, Sacramento, CA.

Koopman, M. E., B. L. Cypher, and J. H. Scrivner. 2000. Dispersal Patterns of San Joaquin Kit Foxes (*Vulpes macrotis mutica*). Journal of Mammalogy 81:213–222.

McCue, P., and T. P. O'Farrell. 1981. Inventory of San Joaquin Kit Fox on BLM Lands in the Western San Joaquin Valley. Topical Report EGG 1183-2416, EG&G, Santa Barbara Operations, U.S. Department of Energy, Goleta, CA.

O'Farrell, T. P., and L. Gilbertson 1979. Ecological Life History of the Desert Kit Fox in the Mojave Desert of Southern California. Final Report. U.S. Bureau of Land Management, Desert Plan Staff, Riverside, CA.

Orloff, S., F. Hall, and L. Spiegel. 1986. Distribution and Habitat Requirements of the San Joaquin Kit Fox in the Northern Extreme of Their Range. Transactions of the Western Section of The Wildlife Society 22: 60–70.

Roderick, P. J., and N. E. Mathews. 1999. Characteristics of Natal and Non-Natal Kit Fox Dens in the Northern Chihuahuan Desert. Great Basin Naturalist 59(3):252–258.

Spencer, K. A., Berry, W. H., Standley, W. G., O'Farrell, T. P. 1992. Reproduction of the San Joaquin Kit Fox on Camp Roberts National Guard Training Site, California. Topical Report, EG&G, Santa Barbara Operations, U.S. Department of Energy, Goleta, CA.

Spiegel, L. K. and M. Bradbury. 1992. Home Range Characteristics of the San Joaquin Kit Fox in Western Kern County, California. Transactions of the Western Section Wildlife Society 28:83–92.

Standley, W. G., W. H. Berry, T. O'Farrell, and T. Kato. 1992. Mortality of San Joaquin Kit Fox (*Vulpes velox macrotis*) at Camp Roberts Army National Guard Training Site, California. Topical Report, EG&G, Santa Barbara Operations, U.S. Department of Energy, Goleta, CA.

U.S. Army Garrison Fort Hunter Liggett 2012. Integrated Natural Resources Management Plan/Environmental Assessment.

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. 2013. Endangered Species Facts; San Joaquin Kit Fox. August. Available: https://www.epa.gov/sites/production/files/2013-08/documents/san-joaquin-kitfox.pdf. Accessed: January 15, 2019.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 1983. The San Joaquin Kit Fox Recovery Plan. Prepared by Dr. Thomas O'Farrell under interagency contract DE-ACOB-76NV01183 with the U.S. Department of Energy. 90 pp.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 1998. Recovery Plan for Upland Species of the San Joaquin Valley, California. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Region 1, Portland, OR. 319 pp.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 2010. San Joaquin Kit Fox (*Vulpes macrotis mutica*) 5-Year Review: Summary and Evaluation. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Sacramento Fish and Wildlife Office, Sacramento, CA.

White, P. J. and K. Ralls. 1993. Reproduction and Spacing Patterns of Kit Foxes Relative to Changing Prey Availability. Journal of Wildlife Management 57(4):861–867.

Appendix F8
Monterey Spineflower Species Account

F8.1 Monterey Spineflower (*Chorizanthe pungens* var*. pungens*)

F8.1.1 Legal Status

F8.1.1.1 State

Monterey spineflower is not listed under the CESA. At the local level, Monterey spineflower is categorized as a California Native Plant Society Rank 1B.2 species.[1]

F8.1.1.2 Federal

Monterey spineflower was listed as federally threatened by USFWS in 1994 (59 FR 5499).

F8.1.1.3 Critical Habitat

Critical habitat for the Monterey spineflower was designated in 2002 (67 FR 37497) and 2008 (73 FR 1525) and is located within the northwestern portion of the study area.

F8.1.2 Taxonomy

The Monterey spineflower was originally described by George Bentham in 1836 based on a specimen collected by David Douglas from Monterey in 1833. It was originally classified as *Chorizanthe douglasii* var. *albens* by Charles Parry in 1889. Parry's classification was reassigned to *C. pungens* decades later, which was further reduced to two varieties: *C. pungens* var. *pungens and C. pungens* var. *hartwegiana*. *C. pungens* var. *pungens* differs from *C. p.* var. *hartwegiana* by having involucral lobe margins that are white rather than dark pink or purple (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1998; Reveal and Rosatti 2013).

F8.1.3 Description

Monterey spineflower is an annual prostrate herb in the buckwheat family (*Polygonaceae*). It has linear, alternate leaves and the inflorescence is characterized by hooked involucre awns. Monterey spineflower blooms from April through July and can self-pollinate as well as outcross. It produces small seeds that are dropped or shaken by wind from their capsule and may then be dispersed with blowing sand or by fur-bearing animals to which the spiny fruits may attach and be carried. The species colonizes open sandy sites and tends to invade roadsides and firebreaks (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1998).

[1] *1B* means rare, threatened, or endangered in California and elsewhere; *.2* means fairly endangered in California.

F8.1.4 Distribution

F8.1.4.1 State

Historical

The Monterey spineflower is known from the mountains of Santa Cruz County south to the coastline of Monterey and inland to the coastal plain of the Salinas Valley. Historically, this species occurred farther south near San Lucas in southern Monterey County and near San Simeon along the coast of northern San Luis Obispo County as indicated in early collections by Keck and Stockwell in 1935 and Gambel in 1842, respectively (California Native Plant Society 2018a, 2018b). Historical occurrences in the Salinas Valley have been extirpated primarily because of conversion of natural habitat to agricultural land.

Recent

The range of the Monterey spineflower is now limited to the interior of Santa Cruz County south along the coastal areas of the Monterey Peninsula, as well as the inland coastal plain of the Salinas Valley. There are 36 extant occurrences known from the region (California Department of Fish and Wildlife 2018). The northernmost population is known from the Santa Cruz Mountains between Scotts Valley and Felton, and the southernmost population is located on the south side of the Salinas River levee approximately 2.5 miles southeast of the town of Soledad. The largest population occurs on the Fort Ord on the coast of the Monterey Bay and the furthest inland population is located in Manzanita Park near Prunedale (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1998; 73 FR 1525; California Department of Fish and Wildlife 2018; California Native Plant Society 2018a, 2018b).

F8.1.4.2 Study Area

Twenty eight occurrences of Monterey spineflower are known from within the study area, most of which have been documented in the last 40 years (California Department of Fish and Wildlife 2018; California Native Plant Society 2018b). They are found predominately along the coastline on protected lands of Salinas River State Beach, Salinas River National Wildlife Refuge, and Marina State Beach and on Fort Ord. Only 2 of the 28 occurrences are reported from the coastal plain of the Salinas Valley: one historic location sighted by Jepson in 1920 and annotated by Reveal in 1987 in the Arroyo Seco riverbed just upstream of the confluence with the Salinas River near Mission Soledad (California Department of Fish and Wildlife 2018); and another more recent occurrence along the Salinas River levee approximately 2.5 miles southeast of Soledad reported in 1994 and 2013 (California Department of Fish and Wildlife 2018; California Native Plant Society 2018b).

F8.1.5 Natural History

F8.1.5.1 Habitat Requirements

Monterey spineflower is found in maritime chaparral, coast live oak woodland, coastal scrub, grassland, and coastal dune habitats. It tends to colonize open sandy sites with little to no vegetative cover and has been found in firebreaks, along roadsides, and within sandy openings between shrubs. This species can tolerate some disturbance, such as scraping of roads and firebreaks, which can reduce the competition from other herbaceous species and consequently provide favorable conditions for Monterey spineflower. The largest population on Fort Ord is reported from sandy areas that were frequently disturbed by military training activities. Occurrences range in elevation from 7 to 2,300 feet. Species primarily associated with Monterey spineflower include beach-bur (*Ambrosia chamissonis*), coastal sagewort (*Atremisia pycnocephala*), and mock heather (*Ericameria ericioides*).

F8.1.5.2 Reproduction

Monterey spineflower plants produce one seed per flower successfully via self- or cross-pollination. In plants with high vigor, this can equate to dozens of seeds produced in one blooming season per plant. Plants typically germinate soon after winter rains, flowering occurs in the spring, and seed is set in the summer. Dispersal is either by wind or animal. Seeds are characterized by hooked spines that help facilitate successful attachment to local animals during the late summer and early fall (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2009). A study regarding the seed bank of Monterey spineflower found that density of a population is directly related to the previous year's seed set (Fox et al. 2006), suggesting that the species does not create an extensive, reliable seed bank. However, there have been recent studies documenting Monterey spineflower reappearing after iceplant removal activities, indicating that a stable seed bank exists in some locations and can substantially repopulate a site after several years of dormancy (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2009).

F8.1.5.3 Ecological Relationships

Potential breeding system studies on Monterey spineflower have yet to be conducted; however, a pollination ecology study was conducted on a closely related species: robust spineflower (*Chorizanthe robusta var. robusta*), a species from Santa Cruz County that is federally listed as endangered. The pollination study compared the pollination ecology of coastal and inland populations (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2009) and found that although the species may self-pollinate, pollinator access to flowers significantly increased seed set. Because these two taxa occur in close proximity to each other at several locations (Sunset and Manresa State Beaches), inhabit similar niches, and are closely related (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2009), the results of this study should be considered relevant for the recovery of Monterey spineflower. The study also found that a high diversity of potential pollinators, including sweat bees (Halictidae), bumblebees (*Bombus* sp.), wasps (Sphecidae), honeybees (*Apis mellifera*), and soft-winged flower beetles (Dasytidae), were reported to transport pollen efficiently. Pollinator diversity also correlated with variation in habitat conditions, including slope; proximity to the coast; and the structure, composition, and density of the surrounding vegetation (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2009). These results indicated that pollinator diversity and habitat protection is important to the recovery of the *Chorizanthe* taxa.

F8.1.6 Population Status and Trends

F8.1.6.1 Population Trend

State

As an annual species, Monterey spineflower is highly dependent upon annual precipitation, resulting in large fluctuations across populations each year. At the time of listing in 1994, Monterey spineflower was known from a dozen scattered populations along the Monterey Peninsula, at Manzanita Park near Prunedale, in the coastal terraces of Fort Ord, and from historical collections described from Watsonville and Soledad in the Salinas Valley. Since its listing, additional populations have been discovered in the Prunedale Hills of Monterey County and interior areas of Santa Cruz County. Many populations support large numbers of individuals (thousands or tens of thousands of plants) scattered in openings among the dominant perennial vegetation (California Department of Fish and Wildlife 2018).

Study Area

All 28 occurrences within the study area are presumed to be extant (California Department of Fish and Wildlife 2018) except for one occurrence in the coastal plain of the Salinas Valley observed by Jepson in 1920. The majority of occurrences are on protected lands managed by California State Parks or the Fort Ord Reuse Authority, therefore declines in populations and contraction of the range are not anticipated. Historically, this species occurred farther south near San Lucas in southern Monterey County and near San Simeon along the coast of northern San Luis Obispo County, as indicated in early collections by Keck and Stockwell in 1935 and Gambel in 1842.

F8.1.7 Threats

At the time of listing, several threats to Monterey spineflower habitat were identified: industrial and residential development, recreational use including horseback riding, and road improvements. Urban development in coastal cities, and to a lesser extent in the study area, has resulted in the loss of large portions of the range of Monterey spineflower. In addition, introduction of invasive African ice plant (*Carpobrotus edulis*) and European beach grass (*Ammophila arenaria*) for dune stabilization has altered typical Monterey spineflower habitat and made conditions unsuitable for the species. In the USFWS 5-year review for the species, newly identified threats to the species include climate change and sea level rise; however, the extent of these threats is unknown (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2009).

F8.1.8 Recovery Planning

F8.1.8.1 State

According to the *Seven Coastal Plants and the Myrtle's Silverspot Butterfly Recovery Plan* (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1998), the strategy for recovery of the Monterey Spineflower will involve (1) habitat restoration via eradication of invasive plant species; (2) protection of occupied habitat; (3) species reintroduction to historical range, and (4) long term monitoring and management.

F8.1.8.2 Study Area

Long term restoration and monitoring for Monterey spineflower has been ongoing within the study area on Marina State Beach, Sunset State Beach, and Asilomar State Park lands, which are protected in perpetuity (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1998). In addition, populations at Fort Ord are also being protected and monitored by several agencies including USFWS (2009) and U.S. Army Corps of Engineers as part of the *Installation-Wide Multispecies Habitat Management Plan for Former Fort Ord, California* (U.S. Army Corps of Engineers 1997, 2013).

F8.1.9 Existing Conservation Actions in the Study Area

Currently Marina State Beach, Sunset State Beach, and Asilomar State Park are removing invasive plant species, planting native species, protecting known occurrences of the species, and conducting annual monitoring activities per the recovery plan (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1998). Habitat reserve areas established on Fort Ord that contain Monterey spineflower are also being monitored and managed as part of the habitat management plan established for the base closure (U.S. Army Corps of Engineers 1997). In addition, the FOHCP is expected to be completed by 2020, and activities associated with this plan will protect and monitor the known occurrences of Monterey spineflower at Fort Ord.

Efforts to control invasive giant reed and tamarisk and restore riparian habitat in the Salinas River watershed are underway in Monterey County, and major efforts are administered by the Resource Conservation District of Monterey County and implemented through partnerships with state and local agencies as well and private land-owners and non-profit organizations (Resource Conservation District of Monterey County 2018). These efforts will also benefit the two known occurrences of Monterey spineflower in the watershed as well as restore historical localities where the species once occurred and may be reintroduced as suggested by USFWS (2009) in the 5-year review.

F8.1.10 Literature Cited

California Department of Fish and Wildlife. 2018. California Natural Diversity Database. Rare Find 5 Version 5.2.14. June. Sacramento, CA: California Department of Fish and Wildlife.

California Native Plant Society. 2018a. Inventory of Rare and Endangered Plants (online edition, v8-03 0.39). Sacramento, CA. Available: http://www.cnps.org/inventory. Accessed: July 2018.

California Native Plant Society. 2018b. California Native Plant Society Calscape. Sacramento, CA. Available: http://calscape.org. Accessed: July 2018.

Fox, L., H. Steele, K. Holl, and M. Fusari. 2006. Contrasting Demographies and Persistence of Rare Annual Plants in Highly Variable Environments. Plant Ecology 183:157–170.

Resource Conservation District of Monterey County. 2018. Salinas River Watershed. Available: https://www.rcdmonterey.org/salinas-river. Accessed: January 2019.

Reveal, J. L., and T. J. Rosatti. 2013. Chorizanthe pungens *var*. pungens, *in Jepson Flora Project* (eds.). Jepson eFlora. Available: http://ucjeps.berkeley.edu/cgi-bin/get_IJM.pl?tid=56501. Accessed: July 2018.

U.S. Army Corps of Engineers. 1997. Installation-Wide Multispecies Habitat Management Plan for Former Fort Ord. AR BW-1787. April. With technical assistance from Jones and Stokes Associates. 487 pp.

U.S. Army Corps of Engineers. 2013. Annual Biological Monitoring Report Former Fort Ord, California. March. Worldwide Environmental Remediation Services Contract No. W912dy-10-D-0024. Prepared by Denise Duffey and Associates. 46 pp.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 1998. Recovery Plan for Seven Coastal Plants and the Myrtle's Silverspot Butterfly. September. Prepared by U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Ventura and Sacramento, CA. 151 pp.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 2009. Monterey Spineflower (*Chorizanthe pungens var. pungens*) 5-Year Review Summary and Evaluation. January. Ventura Fish and Wildlife Office, Ventura, CA.

Appendix F9
Sand Gilia Species Account

F9.1 Sand Gilia (*Gilia tenuiflora* ssp. *arenaria*)

F9.1.1 Legal Status

F9.1.1.1 State

Sand gilia is listed as threatened under the CESA. At the local level, sand gilia is categorized as a California Native Plant Society Rank 1B.2 species.[1]

F9.1.1.2 Federal

Sand gilia was listed as federally endangered in 1992 by the USFWS (57 FR 27848).

F9.1.1.3 Critical Habitat

No critical habitat has been designated for sand gilia.

F9.1.2 Taxonomy

The sand gilia (also commonly referred to as Monterey gilia) was originally described by George Bentham in 1833 based on a specimen collected by David Douglas from Monterey in the early 1800s. In 1943, Willis Linn Jepson reduced it to a variety of *G. tenuiflora* based on corolla diameter width and color. In 1956, Verne Grant and Alva Day Grant further reduced the taxon to a subspecies based on the taxon's slightly exerted stamens and distinctly large fruit capsules (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1998; Porter 2013).

F9.1.3 Description

Sand gilia is an annual herb in the phlox family (*Polemoniaceae*) less than 7 inches tall. It is characterized by a central erect stem supported by a basal rosette of leaves with several other stems spreading out from the base densely covered with glandular hairs, giving the plant a cobwebby appearance near the base. The taxon has white and purple funnel-shaped flowers with narrow petal lobes. Sand gilia typically germinates from December to February and blooms from April to June. It is able to self-pollinate as well as outcross, and fruit is set by the end of May (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1998). It produces small seeds that are dropped or shaken from their capsules and are then dispersed, likely by gravity or wind. The plant occurs along trails and roadsides, on the cut banks of sandy ephemeral drainages, in recently burned chaparral, and in other disturbed patches. It appears to do well on sites that have undergone recent substrate disturbance. Most populations are small and localized (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2008). Many of the populations of sand gilia found in the study area support individuals with characteristics intermediate with sand gilia and the related

[1] 1B means rare, threatened, or endangered in California and elsewhere; .2 means fairly endangered in California.

subspecies slender-flowered gilia (*Gilia tenuiflora* ssp. *tenuiflora*) (Dorrell-Canepa 1994). Slender-flowered gilia is an inland subspecies known to occur in the study area in sandy washes of woodlands in the Salinas Valley. It is possible that the study area is a zone of intergradation between these two subspecies.

F9.1.4 Distribution

F9.1.4.1 State

Historical

Sand gilia is historically known from the Monterey Peninsula dune complexes. Five historical occurrences were distributed in discontinuous coastal populations from the dunes north of Marina to Monterey. Before 1990, this species was presumed to be extinct; historical occurrences were extirpated primarily because of conversion of natural habitat to development, agriculture, or military uses. Two inland locations within the Salinas Valley and Santa Lucia Mountains are also known from historical collections but are likely extirpated as well (California Native Plant Society 2018a, 2018b; Consortium of California Herbaria 2018).

Recent

Currently, sand gilia is known from 27 extant occurrences in a relatively small geographic range spanning approximately 22 miles of the California coast from Sunset Beach State Park in Santa Cruz County to Pacific Grove in Monterey County. Of these coastal populations, some are scattered inland throughout Fort Ord (California Department of Fish and Wildlife 2018). Approximately half of the potentially extant coastal occurrences occur on State, federal, and local agency protected lands with the remaining half on private lands (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2008).

F9.1.4.2 Study Area

All but six of the statewide sand gilia occurrences are known from the study area, most of which have been documented in the last 50 years (California Department of Fish and Wildlife 2018; California Native Plant Society 2018b). The 21 extant occurrences are predominately found along the coastline or on Fort Ord. None of the occurrences are reported from the Salinas Valley.

F9.1.5 Natural History

F9.1.5.1 Habitat Requirements

Sand gilia is found on rear dunes, near the dune summit in level areas, and on depressions or slopes in wind-sheltered openings in low-growing dune scrub vegetation. On ancient dune soils, which extend inland between 6 and 8 miles from the coast, it occurs in openings among maritime chaparral, coastal sage scrub, oak woodlands, grasslands, and where other vegetative cover is low. At least half of the species' range occurs in the study area, where extensive suitable habitat is found in dunes of Salinas River State Beach, Salinas River National Wildlife Refuge, Marina State Beach as well as in maritime chaparral of Fort Ord. Occurrences range in elevation from 0 to 100 feet. Species associated with sand gilia include dune bush lupine (*Lupinus chamissonis*), coastal buckwheat (*Eriogonum latifolium*), beach-bur, coastal sagewort, and mock heather.

F9.1.5.2 Reproduction

Sand gilia plants produce three to many seeds per flower successfully primarily by self-pollination. Plants typically germinate soon after winter rains, flowering occurs in the early spring, and seed is set in the late spring or early summer. Dispersal is by wind (Dorrell-Canepa 1994). A study conducted in the early 2000s showed that sand gilia have long-lived seeds, which contribute to the taxon's persistent soil seed bank (Fox et al. 2006). After a large burn on Fort Ord, the subspecies emerged even in areas where it had not been observed pre-burn (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2008). Furthermore, where burns occurred in occupied habitat, density of individuals increased and overall plant size was larger for at least 2 years following the prescribed burn event. This study indicated that sand gilia can tolerate variable climatic conditions and that successful germination events may only occur in years with very specific conditions.

F9.1.5.3 Ecological Relationships

Sand gilia requires semi-open areas of sandy soil to germinate and to thrive. The taxon is generally found in sparse dune scrub and maritime chaparral communities and does not compete well in denser vegetation communities (Dorrell-Canepa 1994). Most populations of sand gilia either seem to have a high cover of invasive plants already established or are being encroached upon. Due to the presence of invasive species throughout the geographic range of the subspecies, invasive plant species management will be required in long-term planning for recovery (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2008).

F9.1.6 Population Status and Trends

F9.1.6.1 Population Trend

State

Sand gilia is an annual species and like most annual taxa, it can go through large changes in number of individuals from year to year depending on rainfall amounts and timing of events (U.S. Army Corps of Engineers 2013). For instance, rainfall events later in the growing season can significantly affect population trends observed in sand gilia (Dorrell-Canepa 1994). Surveys at Marina State Beach have reported fluctuations from a low of 5,000 individuals in 1987 to a high of 25,000 individuals in 1993; the number of individuals at Salinas River State Beach has fluctuated from a low of 1,665 individuals in 1987 to a high of 13,500 individuals in 1993 (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2008). A more recent monitoring effort on Fort Ord was conducted between 2010 and 2013 with fluctuations in number of individuals markedly related to precipitation amounts and timing. Average population numbers ranged from 10 to 50 individuals in drought years with up to 1,000 plants in reference plots during an average rainfall year (U.S. Army Corps of Engineers 2013). With increasing pressures and stressors on existing populations, long term monitoring and management is necessary to generate data useful in determining future sand gilia trends or causalities in the remaining populations.

Study Area

All 21 occurrences of sand gilia within the study area are presumed to be extant (California Department of Fish and Wildlife 2018). The majority of occurrences are on protected lands managed by California State Parks, USFWS, or the Fort Ord Reuse Authority, therefore declines in populations and contraction of the range are not anticipated.

F9.1.7 Threats

At the time of listing, several threats to sand gilia habitat were identified: industrial and residential development, recreational use including horseback riding, introduction of invasive species, road improvements, and herbivory. Urban development in coastal cities, and to a lesser extent in the study area, has resulted in the loss of large portions of the range of sand gilia (Dorrell-Canepa 1994). Introduction of invasive African ice plant, jubata grass (*Cortaderia jubata*) and ripgut brome (*Bromus diandrus*) has altered typical sand gilia habitat and made conditions unsuitable for the species. In the 5 year review for the sand gilia, newly identified threats to the species included vegetation management on Fort Ord, including poorly timed prescribed fires, pre-fire treatments that may introduce invasive species into sand gilia habitat, and mechanical vegetation removal in which chipped vegetation is left behind on the soil surface (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2008). Vegetation management activities on Fort Ord are being addressed through the habitat conservation planning process that will guide future management of the inland sites of sand gilia.

F9.1.8 Recovery Planning

F9.1.8.1 State

According to the *Seven Coastal Plants and the Myrtle's Silverspot Butterfly Recovery Plan* (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1998), the strategy for recovery of the sand gilia will involve (1) habitat restoration via eradication of invasive plant species, (2) protection of occupied habitat, (3) species reintroduction to historical range, and (4) long term monitoring and management (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1998, 2008).

F9.1.8.2 Study Area

Long-term restoration and monitoring for sand gilia has been established within the study area on Sunset State Beach, Salinas River State Beach, Marina State Beach, and Asilomar State Park lands, which are protected in perpetuity (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1998). In addition, populations at Fort Ord are also being protected and monitored by several agencies including USFWS (2008) and U.S. Army Corps of Engineers as part of the *Installation-Wide Multispecies Habitat Management Plan for Former Fort Ord, California* (U.S. Army Corps of Engineers 1997, 2013). Transplantation attempts for mitigation at the Spanish Bay Golf Course failed; however, artificial augmentation seeding has been attempted at other sites and has been successful (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2008).

F9.1.9 Existing Conservation Actions in the Study Area

Currently Sunset State Beach, Salinas River State Beach, Marina State Beach, and Asilomar State Park are removing invasive plant species, planting native species, protecting known occurrences of the species, and conducting annual monitoring activities per the recovery plan (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1998). Habitat reserve areas established on Fort Ord that contain sand gilia are also being monitored and managed as part of the habitat management plan established for the base closure (U.S. Army Corps of Engineers 1997). In addition, the FOHCP is expected to be complete by 2020, and activities associated with this plan will also protect and monitor the known occurrences of sand gilia on Fort Ord.

F9.1.10 Literature Cited

California Native Plant Society. 2018a. Inventory of Rare and Endangered Plants (online edition, v8-03 0.39). Sacramento, CA. Available: http://www.cnps.org/inventory. Accessed: July 2018.

California Native Plant Society. 2018b. California Native Plant Society Calscape. Sacramento, CA. Available: http://calscape.org. Accessed: July 2018.

California Department of Fish and Wildlife. California Natural Diversity Database. 2018. Rare Find 5 Version 5.2.14. June. Sacramento, CA.

Consortium of California Herbaria 2018. Consortium of California Herbaria Online Database. Accessed: May 2018. Avaialble at: http://ucjeps.berkeley.edu/consortium/

Dorrell-Canepa, J. 1994. Population Biology of *Gilia tenuiflora* ssp. *arenaria* (Polemoniaceae). Master's thesis. San Jose State University.

Fox, L., H. Steele, K. Holl, M. Fusari. 2006. Contrasting Demographies and Persistence of Rare Annual Plants in Highly Variable Environments. *Plant Ecology* 183:157–170.

Porter, J. M. 2013. *Gilia tenuiflora* ssp. *arenaria*. In: Jepson Flora Project (eds.). Jepson eFlora. Available: http://ucjeps.berkeley.edu/eflora/eflora_display.php?tid=50823. Accessed: July 2018.

U.S. Army Corps of Engineers. 1997. Installation-Wide Multispecies Habitat Management Plan for Former Fort Ord. April. AR BW-1787. With technical assistance from Jones and Stokes Associates. 487 pp.

U.S. Army Corps of Engineers. 2013. Annual Biological Monitoring Report Former Fort Ord, California. March. Worldwide Environmental Remediation Services Contract No. W912dy-10-D-0024. Prepared by Denise Duffey and Associates. 46 pp.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 1998. Recovery Plan for Seven Coastal Plants and the Myrtle's Silverspot Butterfly. September. Prepared by U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Ventura and Sacramento, CA. 151 pp.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 2008. Monterey Gilia (*Gilia tenuiflora* ssp. *arenaria*) 5-Year Review Summary and Evaluation. March. Ventura Fish and Wildlife Office, Ventura, CA.

Appendix G

Data Collection and Data Gap Assessment

Appendix G
Data Collection and Data Gap Assessment

To ensure development of a comprehensive Salinas River Long-Term Management Plan (LTMP), the Monterey County Water Resources Agency (MCWRA) and its technical consultants compiled and reviewed an extensive suite of existing technical reports, management plans, and research related to natural resource management in the study area. This appendix summarizes the data review process employed, provides a discussion of data gaps identified through the review and LTMP development process, and lists future possible studies that could help inform long-term management of the Salinas River.

G.1 Data Collection

Based on the LTMP's goals of documenting the historical conditions in the Salinas River watershed, describing the existing conditions, and informing development of a future MCWRA habitat conservation plan (HCP), MCWRA and its technical consultants identified, collected, and reviewed numerous documents that could potentially provide information for, or guidance on, LTMP development. This process was initiated at the outset of LTMP development and was continued throughout. Recommendations for document review were primarily provided by MCWRA staff, but suggestions and materials were also provided by stakeholders through the planning group and working group meetings. Documents were also provided by the technical team and found through internet research. All collected sources were briefly reviewed for content and tracked. The following section lists resources reviewed but not ultimately used in LTMP development (sources that were used are listed in Chapter 6, *References*). Documents and data sources spanned several decades and included many MCWRA publications including reports on water quality, river flow, groundwater monitoring, biological assessments, environmental impact reports, management plans, fisheries, engineering, facility operations, and budget reports.

As described in Chapter 1, *Introduction*, MCWRA established a stakeholder engagement process to support development of the LTMP. Through the many planning group and working group meetings, MCWRA collected valuable information and insights on the many management issues affecting the Salinas River. These issues, as discussed and examined through the stakeholder engagement process, are captured in LTMP Chapter 4, *Management Plan*, and Chapter 5, *Implementation*. In some instances, stakeholders also recommended documents for review. If these documents were not cited in the LTMP chapters, they are included in this appendix.

G.1.1 Sources Reviewed but Not Cited in the Long-Term Management Plan

The following documents, permits, and websites were reviewed but not ultimately used in LTMP development.

G.1.1.1 Documents

ABA Consultants. 1990. Santa Cruz Long-toed Salamander Survey in Upper Moro Cojo Slough, Monterey County, CA. 1990. Prepared for Saratoga Savings and Loan Association. May. 26 pp.

Abichandani, S.L. 2007. The potential impact of the invasive species *Arundo donax* on water resources along the Santa Clara River: Seasonal and Diurnal Transpiration. M.S. Thesis, Environmental Health Sciences, University of California, Los Angeles.

Ali Taghavi Associates. 2000. Update of the Historical Benefits Analysis (HBA) Hydrological Investigation in the Arroyo Seco Cone Area. Prepared for Monterey County Water Resources Agency. February. 169 pp.

Association of Monterey Bay Area Governments. 1997. Northern Salinas Valley Watershed Restoration Plan: NonPoint Source Pollution in Coastal Harbors and Sloughs: Problem Assessment and Best Management Practices.

Bureau of Reclamation. 2018. Plan of Study, Salinas and Carmel Rivers Basin Study Presentation. May 31.

California Department of Fish and Game. 1984. Draft Environmental Impact Report for the White Bass Management Program. The State Resource Agency. June. 287 pp.

California Department of Fish and Wildlife. 2016. Aquatic Invasive Species Disinfection/Decontamination Protocols (Northern Region). Revised. February. 10 pp.

California Department of Fish and Wildlife. 2018. Amendment No. 3 of Lake or Streambed Alteration Agreement Notification No. 1600-2016-0016-R4 for the Salinas River Stream Maintenance Project-Monterey County. April. 3 pp.

California Department of Fish and Wildlife. 2018. Section 1600 Lake or Streambed Alteration Agreement Application for Geotechnical Investigations at San Antonio Dam in prep for the Interlake Tunnel and Spillway Modification Project.

California State Parks. 1987. Salinas River State Beach General Plan. August. 87 pp.

Castaneda, J.F. 2015. Flooded Artichokes in SMF Ranches Presentation. January.

Central Coast Watershed Studies. 2002. Monitoring Chlorpyrifos and Diazinon in Impaired Surface Waters of the Lower Salinas Region: Status Report No. 1. The Watershed Institute, Earth Systems Science and Policy. California State University, Monterey Bay.

Central Coast Watershed Studies. 2003. Fish Species Distribution and Habitat Quality for Selected D76 in the Salinas Watershed. Summer and Fall 2002. The Watershed Institute, Earth Systems Science and Policy. California State University, Monterey Bay.

Central Coast Watershed Studies. 2004. Monitoring Chlorpyrifos and Diazinon in Impaired Surface Waters of the Lower Salinas Region. The Watershed Institute, Earth Systems Science and Policy. California State University, Monterey Bay.

Central Coast Watershed Studies. 2006. Final MCWRA Reclamation Ditch Watershed Assessment and Management Strategy: Part B Management Strategy. The Watershed Institute, Earth Systems Science and Policy. California State University, Monterey Bay.

Central Coast Wetlands Group and Coastal Conservation and Research. 2016. Salinas River State Beach Dune and Restoration and Management Plan. January. 54 pp.

Central Coast Wetlands Group at Moss Landing Marine Labs. 2015. Mouth Maintenance Permit Summary for Four River Mouth Lagoons in California. November. 3 pp.

Central Coast Wetlands Group at Moss Landing Marine Labs. 2015. Salinas River Lagoon Water Quality Summary. November. 8 pp.

Central Coast Wetlands Group. 2013. Moro Cojo Slough Management and Enhancement Status Update. June. 32 pp.

Central Coast Wetlands Group. 2018. Castroville Community Outreach Summary Report. 23 pp.

City of Santa Cruz Water Department, Coastal Watershed Council, County of Santa Cruz Water Resources Division, Resource Conservation District of Santa Cruz County, and San Lorenzo Valley Water District. 2018. San Lorenzo River Riparian Conservation Program. May. 44 pp.

County of San Luis Obispo Flood Control and Water Conservation District. 2014. Nacimiento Water Project: Initial Watershed Sanitary Survey. Prepared for California Department of Public Health Division of Drinking Water and Environmental Management Drinking Water Program District 06 Santa Barbara. January. 490 pp.

Creative Environmental Conservation. 2009. Restoring Natural Water Systems in Rural Residential Landscapes. February. 188 pp.

Creative Environmental Conservation. 2009. Moro Cojo NSP Implementation Plan. September. 77 pp.

Denise Duffy and Associates. 2015. Biological Assessment for the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service: Pure Water Monterey Groundwater Replenishment Project. Revised March 2016. 144 pp.

Entrix. 2001. Biological Assessment of the Salinas River Mouth Breaching Program. December. 119 pp.

Entrix. 2002. Mitigated Negative Declaration for the Salinas River Mouth Breaching Program. January. 126 pp.

Gordon, B. 1996. Monterey Bay Area: Natural History and Cultural Imprints. Boxwood Press, Pacific Grove CA. pp 48.

Greater Monterey County Integrated Regional Water Management Program. 2013. Integrated Regional Water Management Plan for the Greater Monterey County Region. Appendix J Invasive Species. Regional Water Management Group. April.

Greater Monterey County Integrated Regional Water Management Program. 2013. Integrated Regional Water Management Plan for the Greater Monterey County Region. Appendix L Gabilan Watershed Blueprint. Regional Water Management Group. April.

Greater Monterey County Integrated Regional Water Management Program. 2013. Integrated Regional Water Management Plan for the Greater Monterey County Region. Appendix N Storm Water Resources Plan. Regional Water Management Group. April.

Greater Monterey County Integrated Regional Water Management Program. 2013. Integrated Regional Water Management Plan for the Greater Monterey County Region. Regional Water Management Group. April.

Greater Monterey County Integrated Regional Water Management Program. 2013. Integrated Regional Water Management Plan for the Greater Monterey County Region. Section E Resource Management Strategies. Regional Water Management Group. April.

Greater Monterey County Integrated Regional Water Management Program. 2013. Integrated Regional Water Management Plan for the Greater Monterey County Region. Section F Project Review Process. Regional Water Management Group. April.

Greater Monterey County Integrated Regional Water Management Program. 2013. Integrated Regional Water Management Plan for the Greater Monterey County Region. Section G Projects Amended. Regional Water Management Group. April.

Greater Monterey County Integrated Regional Water Management Program. 2017. List of References for the GMC IRWMP SWRP. August 2017 TAC Meeting Notes.

H.T. Harvey & Associates. 2013. Potential Water Treatment Options for the Blanco Drain and the Reclamation Ditch Watersheds. July. 63 pp.

HDR. 2016. Draft Biological Assessment: Effects of the Pure Water Monterey Groundwater Replenishment Project on the South-Central California Coast Steelhead Distinct Population Segment. January 2016. 144 pp.

Hughes, B. B., M. D. Levey, J. A. Brown, M. C. Fountain, A. B. Carlisle, S. Y. Litvin, C. M. Greene, W. N. Heady, and M. G. Gleason. 2014. Nursery Functions of U.S. West Coast Estuaries: The State of Knowledge for Juveniles of Focal Invertebrate and Fish Species. Prepared for The Nature Conservancy and the Pacific Marine and Estuarine Fish Habitat Partnership, Arlington, VA. 168 pp.

ICF. 2016. Orange County Transportation Authority M2 Natural Community Conservation Plan/Habitat Conservation Plan. Administrative Final. October. 440 pp.

Kukowski, G.E. 1972. A checklist of fishes of the Monterey Bay including Elkhorn Slough, San Lorenzo, Pajaro, and Salinas Rivers. Contributions from the Moss Landing Marine Laboratories, No. 26. Technical Publications 72-2. June. 84 pp.

Londquist, Brian. 2001. Steelhead (*Oncoryhynchus mykiss*) Habitat Assessment along the Arroyo Seco River. California State University Monterey Bay. April.

Monterey County Water Resources Agency. 2000. CEQA Documentation for a Mitigated Negative Declaration for Old Salinas River Channel Dredging. March. 104 pp.

Monterey County Water Resources Agency. 2000. Old Salinas River Section 401 Permit Application.

Monterey County Water Resources Agency. 2000. Section 10 Application for a Permit for Continuing Management of the Old Salinas River. February. 54 pp.

Monterey County Water Resources Agency. 2001. Old Salinas River Coastal Development Permit Application.

Monterey County Water Resources Agency. 2001. Old Salinas River Dredging Permits from the Resource Agencies.

Monterey County Water Resources Agency. 2001. Salinas Valley Water Project Draft Environmental Impact Report/Environmental Impact Statement. January. 806 pp.

Monterey County Water Resources Agency. 2007. Salinas Valley Water Project Addendum to Final Environmental Impact Report/Environmental Impact Statement. July. 18 pp.

Monterey County Water Resources Agency. 2013. Ground Water Summary Report 2012. October. 16 pp.

Monterey County Water Resources Agency. 2013. Low Flow Fisheries Monitoring Feasibility Evaluation of Tributaries of the Arroyo Seco River.

Monterey County Water Resources Agency. 2013. PowerPoint Presentation of Salinas River Management Program Comments from Public Meeting. December.

Monterey County Water Resources Agency. 2014. 2014 Low Flow Adaptive Management Fisheries Monitoring Arroyo Seco River. October. 25 pp.

Monterey County Water Resources Agency. 2014. Arroyo Seco and Nacimiento Rivers Index Reach Monitoring: Dive Count Surveys. October. 29 pp.

Monterey County Water Resources Agency. 2014. Floodplain Management Plan Update. 129 pp.

Monterey County Water Resources Agency. 2014. Ground Water Summary Report 2013. October. 16 pp.

Monterey County Water Resources Agency. 2014. Minimum Passage Criteria Survey for Adult and Juvenile Steelhead. Annual monitoring report for the Salinas Valley Water Project prepared for National Marine Fisheries Service. April.

Monterey County Water Resources Agency. 2014. Notice of Preparation of an Environmental Impact Report and Public Scoping Meeting for the Salinas Valley Water Project.

Monterey County Water Resources Agency. 2014. Salinas Valley Water Project Annual Fisheries Report for 2013. May. 289 pp.

Monterey County Water Resources Agency. 2014. Salinas Valley Water Project Annual Flow Monitoring Report Operational Season 2013. July. 139 pp.

Monterey County Water Resources Agency. 2015. CASGEM Monitoring Plan for High and Medium Basins in the Salinas Valley Groundwater Basin. March.

Monterey County Water Resources Agency. 2015. Groundwater Extraction Summary Report 2014. October. 20 pp.

Monterey County Water Resources Agency. 2015. Lagoon Breaching Data.

Monterey County Water Resources Agency. 2015. Salinas Valley Water Project Annual Flow Monitoring Report Operational Season 2014. August. 79 pp.

Monterey County Water Resources Agency. 2015. Status of White Bass in Lake Nacimiento and its Relationship to the proposed Interlake Tunnel Project and the Sustainability of Monterey County's Water Resources.

Monterey County Water Resources Agency. 2015. Timeline of Events for the Salinas Valley Water Project. Graphic.

Monterey County Water Resources Agency. 2016. Biological Assessment for the Stream Maintenance Program. January. 120 pp.

Monterey County Water Resources Agency. 2016. Interlake Tunnel and Spillway Modification Project Presentation. May.

Monterey County Water Resources Agency. 2016. Lagoon Breaching Data.

Monterey County Water Resources Agency. 2016. Salinas Valley Water Project Annual Flow Monitoring Report Operational Season 2015. May. 80 pp.

Monterey County Water Resources Agency. 2016. User's Manual: A Field Guide for Operators and Participants for Pre-Maintenance and Post-Maintenance Activities. Salinas River Stream Maintenance Program River Management Units 1–7. September. 14 pp.

Monterey County Water Resources Agency. 2017. Monterey County Water Resources Agency Budget Summary by Fund for Fiscal Year ending June 30th 2018.

Monterey County Water Resources Agency. 2017. Monterey County Water Resources Agency Recommended Budget for Fiscal Year ending June 30th 2018. 36 pp.

Monterey County Water Resources Agency. 2017. Notice of Termination of Dredged or Fill Discharges to Waters Deemed by the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers to be Outside of Federal Jurisdiction. Water Quality Order No. 2004-0004-DWQ. January.

Monterey County Water Resources Agency. 2017. Proposed Strategies for Habitat Conservation Plan Development. 20 pp. June.

Monterey County Water Resources Agency. 2017. Salinas Valley Water Project Annual Flow Monitoring Report Operational Season 2016. September. 80 pp.

Monterey County Water Resources Agency. 2018. California Department of Fish and Wildlife Fishery Restoration Grant Program 2018/2019 Funding Opportunity Final Application. March.

Monterey County Water Resources Agency, The Nature Conservancy, Resource Conservation District of Monterey County, and Conservation Collaborative. 2018. Salinas River Stream Maintenance Program Long-Term Effectiveness Assessment Plan. May. 14 pp.

Monterey One Water. 2018. Reclamation Budgets Presentation. May.

Monterey Peninsula Water Management District. 2018. North Monterey County Drought Contingency Plan Presentation. May 31, 2018.

Nacitone Watersheds Steering Committee and Central Coast Salmon Enhancement, Inc. 2008. San Antonio and Nacimiento Rivers Watershed Management Plan. Prepared for Monterey County Water Resources Agency and the State Water Resources Control Board. October. 177 pp.

Reclamation Ditch Improvement Plan Advisory Committee. 2002. Reclamation Ditch Improvement Plan Recommendations. May. 198 pp.

Salinas River Lagoon Task Force. 2016. Meeting Notes.

Salinas River Stream Maintenance Program River Management Unit Association Agreement. 2016. October. 13 pp.

Salinas Valley Basin Groundwater Sustainability Agency. 2018. Meeting Agenda Minutes. August.

Salinas Valley Basin Groundwater Sustainability Agency. 2018. Meeting Agenda Minutes. June.

Salinas Valley Basin Groundwater Sustainability Agency. 2018. Salinas Valley Basin Groundwater Plan Setting. May. 47 slides.

Schaaf & Wheeler. 2000. Potrero Road Tide Gate Configuration and Performance Study. September. 46 pp.

Schaaf & Wheeler. 2016. Water Right Application 32263A, Blanco Drain Flow Memorandum. Letter to Bill Stevens at National Marine Fisheries Service. February. 5 pp.

State Water Resources Control Board and Coastal Conservation and Research. 2008. Implementation of the Moro Cojo Slough Management and Enhancement Plan: Restoration of the Core of the Watershed. March. 180 pp.

Swanson Hydrology and Geomorphology. 2008. Water Resources, Water Quality, and Sediment Supply for the Nacitone Watershed Technical Memorandum. Prepared for Central Coast Salmon Enhancement and Monterey County Water Resource Agency. April. 49 pp.

Tetra Tech. 2015. Salinas River Watershed Area Salt Modeling Report. November. 211 pp.

The Habitat Restoration Group. 1996. Moro Cojo Management and Enhancement Plan. Prepared for the Monterey County Planning and Building Inspection Department and State Coastal Conservancy October. 155 pp.

The Nature Conservancy. 2008. Main Stem Lower Salinas River, Monterey and San Luis Obispo Counties CAP Workbook Threats Assessment Summary Tables.

Toft, J.D., S.H. Munsch, J.R. Cordell, K. Siitari, V.C. Hare, B. Holycross, L. A. DeBruyckere, and C. M. Greene. 2015. Nursery Functions of West Coast Estuaries: Data Assessment for Juveniles of 15 Focal Fish and Crustacean Species. Pacific Marine and Estuarine Fish Habitat Partnership and National Fish Habitat Partnership. November. 60 pp.

G.1.1.2 Permits

Central Coast Regional Water Quality Control Board. 2007. Water Quality Certification Number 32707WQ03 for the Salinas Valley Water Project, Monterey County.

Central Coast Regional Water Quality Control Board. 2016. Technically Conditioned Water Quality Certification Number 32716WQ02 for 2016-2025 Salinas River Stream Maintenance Program, Monterey County. August. 25 pp.

Central Coast Regional Water Quality Control Board. 2018. Section 401 Water Quality Certification Application for Geotechnical Investigations at San Antonio Dam in prep for the Interlake Tunnel and Spillway Modification Project.

National Marine Fisheries Service. 2003. Programmatic Biological Opinion for the Regional General Permit for Channel Maintenance of the Salinas River, Monterey County, CA. July. 45 pp.

National Marine Fisheries Service. 2016. Endangered Species Act Section 7(a)(2) Concurrence Letter and Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act Essential Fish Habitat Response for the Monterey County Water Resources Agency Stream Maintenance Program. Corps File #22309S. September. 11 pp.

National Marine Fisheries Service. 2016. Endangered Species Act Section 7(a)(2) Concurrence Letter and Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act Essential Fish Habitat Response for the Pure Water Monterey Groundwater Replenishment Project. Reference # WCR-2016-5540. December.

State Water Resources Control Board. 2013. Right to Divert Water Permit #11043. Permit Holder: Monterey County Water Resources Agency. September. 33 pp.

U.S. Army Corps of Engineers. 2003. Department of the Army Regional General Permit 10 for mechanized vegetation removal along sandbars of the Salinas River. August. 110 pp.

U.S. Army Corps of Engineers. 2007. Section 404 Permit to Discharge fill into Salinas River for the Salinas Valley Water Project.

U.S. Army Corps of Engineers. 2016. Department of the Army Regional General Permit 20 for the Salinas River Stream Maintenance Program. September. 8 pp.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 2003. Biological Opinion for the Regional General Permit for Channel Maintenance of the Salinas River, Monterey County, CA. August. 20 pp.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 2016. Biological Opinion for the Pure Water Monterey Groundwater Replenishment Project, Monterey County, CA (O8EVENOO-2016-TA-0643).

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 2016. Biological Opinion for the Salinas River Stream Maintenance Program, Monterey County, CA (2016-F-0319) (Corps File No, 22309S). August. 78 pp.

G.1.1.3 Websites

California Department of Fish and Wildlife. Data Portal. Available at: https://nrm.dfg.ca.gov/.

California Department of Water Resources. 2018. Natural Communities Commonly Associated with Groundwater (NCCAG) dataset. Available at: https://gis.water.ca.gov/app/NCDatasetViewer/.

Central Coast Regional Water Quality Control Board and U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. 2018. Central Coast Ambient Monitoring Program. Available at: http://www.ccamp.us/ca/view_data.php?org_id=rb3.

Environmental Coalition of Water Justice. 2018. Water Quality and Water Service Areas database. Available at: https://www.arcgis.com/apps/View/index.html?appid=1aea37e5150c425f987bd7129ad40a53

Greater Monterey County Integrated Regional Water Management Program. 2018. Disadvantaged Community Plan. Available at: http://www.greatermontereyirwmp.org/documents/disadvantaged-community-plan-for-drinking-water-and-wastewater/.

G.2 Data Gap Assessment

Below is a summary of the data gaps revealed through the literature review process and through technical team recommendations. These data gaps were not explicitly discussed with the planning group and thus were not included in Chapter 4, *Management Plan*. These data gaps are additive to the management actions identified in Chapter 4, and there may be value in considering these data gaps as potential management actions during LTMP implementation.

- **Arroyo Seco habitat assessment.** The Arroyo Seco and its tributaries are believed to support the majority, if not all, of the spawning habitat for South-Central California Coast steelhead (steelhead) in the Salinas River watershed in the management area. While some surveys have been conducted in the Arroyo Seco and its tributaries, these surveys were not intended to determine the amount of habitat available to support spawning and rearing steelhead or to determine whether steelhead could pass the natural migratory barrier in wet years. A thorough examination of available habitat would allow an estimation of the potential carrying capacity of steelhead in the Arroyo Seco.
- **Arroyo Seco HEC-RAS flow model.** Data is lacking regarding hydrologic factors for the Arroyo Seco subwatershed. These factors directly affect how management activities for steelhead and their associated habitat requirements (i.e., stream topography, flow velocities) should be conducted. Development of a surface water flow model would help to better understand these habitat requirements. In order to develop such a model, one essential component that has yet to be incorporated into the model for these watersheds is a review of the latest LiDAR data. With this data, the model can be updated to run simulations for current and future water years and provide information to analyze habitat management measures for steelhead. LiDAR collection and processing and a field survey to spot check LiDAR results will be required. Once this data is collected and incorporated into the model, additional simulations can be configured and analyzed to support steelhead management measures.
- **Additional stream gage installation.** There are only four gages on the mainstem of the Salinas River. Of the Salinas River's undammed tributaries in the study area, only the Arroyo Seco and San Lorenzo are gaged. Installation of additional stream gages on the Salinas River mainstem and on key tributaries would help to better understand how water moves throughout the Salinas River basin (above and below ground).
- **Fish flow model.** Develop a model for the Salinas River watershed to inform management of instream flow conditions to support steelhead migration, spawning, and rearing habitat. The model should consider the interaction of surface water and groundwater, including—but not limited to—channel substrate, gaining/losing reaches, location of water diversions, and groundwater pumping.
- **Evapotranspiration study.** Based on at least one study in other parts of California (Abichandani 2007), it is believed that *Arundo donax* (Arundo) consumes, and subsequently releases to the atmosphere, quantities of water so significant that they substantially affect the

volume of insteam flow. A study specific to rate(s) of evapotranspiration on the Salinas River, including its Arundo infestation, would help inform the fish flow model recommended in the preceding bullet.

- **Riparian tree loss analysis.** Members of the Salinas River Stream Maintenance Program River Management Unit Association have noted anecdotally a substantial loss in riparian woodland habitat, specifically cottonwood trees, on the Salinas River mainstem over the last 5 years (a period marked by extended drought). Robust riparian mapping predated this period of loss. Updated surveys are needed to determine the current status of riparian woodland habitat. Older survey data could serve as a baseline against which to assess the riparian woodland reduction, and to identify possible biological trends that are relevant for future river management actions. Once a reduction in riparian woodland habitat is confirmed, further study should investigate the cause of the loss.
- **Expanded historical ecology study.** The historical ecology study of the Salinas River completed by the San Francisco Estuary Institute (2009) covers only the lower portion of the Salinas River, from just downstream of the confluence with the Arroyo Seco to the Monterey Bay. A complete historical study, including the upper reaches of the river, is recommended to inform future management actions, and in particular, river and riparian restoration. Historical information on the main tributaries to the Salinas River would also be valuable in better understanding the system as well as the history of the floodplain.
- **Least Bell's vireo surveys.** Least Bell's vireo is a federally endangered species once known to occupy the riparian forests of the Salinas River. It is unknown whether these birds persist in the management area. Surveys for least Bell's vireo would help inform management actions on the Salinas River, as well as the forthcoming HCP.
- **Salinas River Lagoon habitat assessment.** A number of management actions in Table 4-1 call for Salinas River Lagoon assessments (i.e., water elevation, existing infrastructure, water quality as related to breaching, bathometry, wetland restoration opportunities); however, none of these specifically address the location and quality of habitat for the different species that use the lagoon for all or portions of their life stages. A Salinas River Lagoon habitat assessment would inform other management actions (e.g., water quality, wetland restoration), but would also support the conservation strategy to be developed under the forthcoming HCP.

Appendix H

Regulatory Context

Appendix H
Regulatory Context

When undertaking any type of ground-disturbing or vegetation-manipulating activities, it is important to consider that the action taken may affect resources regulated by one or more agency and may require one or more regulatory permits. Long-term management solutions for the Salinas River, including flood risk management, water resource management, and threatened and endangered species managemxent, will require compliance with various environmental laws and regulations. This appendix provides an overview of the regulatory agencies and key environmental laws and regulations that are likely to apply to implementation of management actions proposed in the Salinas River Long-Term Management Plan.

H.1 Federal and State Agencies with Regulatory Authority

The following agencies have regulatory authority over one or more of the laws and regulations discussed in this appendix.

- California Coastal Commission
    - California Coastal Act (coastal development permit)
- California Department of Fish and Wildlife (CDFW)
    - California Endangered Species Act (CESA) (incidental take permit)
    - California Fish and Game Code Section 1602 (lake or streambed alteration agreement)
- Regional Water Quality Control Boards (Regional Water Boards)
    - Clean Water Act (CWA) Section 401 (water quality certification)
    - CWA Section 402 (National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System [NPDES] permit)
    - Porter-Cologne Water Quality Control Act (Porter-Cologne Act) (waste discharge requirement)
- State Water Resources Control Board (State Water Board)
    - California Water Code (water rights)
- U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE)
    - CWA Section 404 (dredge and fill authorization)
    - Rivers and Harbors Act Section 10 (conversion of navigable waters authorization)
- U.S Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) and National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS)
    - Endangered Species Act (ESA) Section 7 (incidental take statement and biological opinion)
    - ESA Section 10 (incidental take permit and habitat conservation plan [HCP])

- USFWS
  - Migratory Bird Treaty Act of 1918 (MBTA) (special purpose permit)
- Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA)
  - National Flood Insurance Act (floodplain development permit)
- California State Lands Commission (CSLC)
  - California State Lands Act (lease of surface and submerged lands)

H.2 Federal Laws and Regulations

H.2.1 Clean Water Act

The CWA is the primary federal law that protects the physical, chemical, and biological integrity of the nation's waters, including lakes, rivers, wetlands, and coastal waters. Programs conducted under the CWA are directed at both point-source pollution (e.g., waste discharged from outfalls and filling of waters) and nonpoint-source pollution (e.g., runoff from parking lots). Under the CWA, the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) and state agencies set effluent limitations and issue permits under CWA Section 402 governing point-source discharges of wastes to waters. USACE, applying its regulations under guidelines issued by EPA, issues permits under CWA Section 404 governing under what circumstances dredged or fill material may be discharged to waters. These Section 402 and 404 permits are the primary regulatory tools of the CWA. EPA has oversight over all CWA permits that USACE issues.

H.2.1.1 Section 404

Under Section 404 of the CWA, a permit is required from the USACE for the placement of dredged or fill material into waters of the United States, including wetlands. USACE issues two types of permits under Section 404: general permits (typically nationwide permits or regional permits) and standard permits (either letters of permission or individual permits). General permits are issued to streamline the Section 404 process for nationwide, statewide, or regional activities that have minimal direct or cumulative environmental impacts on the aquatic environment. Standard permits are issued for activities that do not qualify for a general permit (i.e., that may have more than a minimal adverse environmental impact).

Issuance of a Section 404 permit often requires USACE to consult with NMFS and/or USFWS to comply with Section 7 of ESA. This consultation addresses the federally listed species that may be affected by the action requiring a permit from USACE. For cases in which a federal species permit already exists that addresses the action requiring a permit from USACE (such as is the case for regional HCPs established under ESA Section 10), the consultation under ESA Section 7 may be greatly streamlined.

Penalties may result if fills are placed within USACE jurisdiction without permit approval or if an applicant fails to follow the terms and conditions of an approved Section 404 permit. Under Section 309(a), EPA can issue administrative compliance orders requiring a violator to stop any ongoing illegal discharge activity and, where appropriate, to remove the illegal discharge and otherwise restore the site. Under Section 309(g), EPA can assess administrative civil penalties of up to $16,000 per day of violation, with a maximum cap of $187,500 in any single enforcement action. In judicial enforcement, Sections 309(b) and (d) and 404(s) give EPA and the USACE the authority to take civil judicial enforcement actions, seeking restoration and other types of injunctive relief, as well as civil penalties. The agencies also have authority under Section 309(c) to bring criminal judicial enforcement actions for knowingly or negligently violating Section 404 (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency 2018).

H.2.1.2 Section 401

Section 401 of the federal CWA requires that applicants for a federal license or permit to conduct activities that may result in the discharge of a pollutant into waters of the United States must obtain water quality certification from the state in which the discharge would originate or, if appropriate, from the interstate water pollution control agency with jurisdiction over affected waters at the point where the discharge would originate. Therefore, all projects that have a federal component and may affect state water quality (including projects that require federal agency approval, such as issuance of a Section 404 permit) must also comply with CWA Section 401.

California is a state in which Section 401 is regulated by a state agency: the State Water Board and its nine Regional Water Boards. In Monterey County, the Central Coast Regional Water Board is responsible for issuing Section 401 water quality certifications, which certify that a proposed action is compliant with state water quality standards. Although the Regional Water Board has its own application forms, in practice, the application for Section 401 certification and for issuance or waiver of waste discharge requirements (WDRs) (see Section H.3.1, *Porter-Cologne Water Quality Control Act*) are combined, and can use much of the same information as the CWA Section 404 permit application. For projects occurring within multiple state and federal agency jurisdictions, the Joint Aquatic Resources Permit Application may also be used. In either case, the Regional Water Board cannot provide Section 401 certification until after California Environmental Quality Act (CEQA) review is complete. The USACE will require compliance with Section 401 as a prerequisite to authorization of the project under Section 404.

Failure to seek approval or follow terms and conditions under Section 401 may result in civil fines, jail time, and/or judicial enforcement actions as described by Section 309 of the CWA.

H.2.1.3 Section 402

Regulated by the local Regional Water Board, CWA Section 402 requires a NPDES permit for all construction projects disturbing 1 acre or greater of land, as well as municipal, industrial, and commercial facilities that discharge wastewater or stormwater into a surface water of the United States. All NPDES permits are written to ensure that receiving waters meet the state's water quality standards. The NPDES Program is a federal program delegated to the State of California for implementation by the State and Regional Water Boards.

H.2.2 Rivers and Harbors Act, Section 10

Regulated by USACE, Section 10 of the Rivers and Harbors Act requires authorization from USACE for the construction of any structure, dredging or disposal of dredged materials, excavation, filling, rechannelization, or any other modification in or over any defined navigable current or historical waters of the United States. Historical waters are defined by diked areas that used to be part of a tidal navigable system that are still at or below the mean high water elevation. The Salinas River is considered a traditional navigable water up to River Mile 7. Thus, a Section 10 permit would be required for work proposed at or below the mean high water line from River Miles 0 through 7. A Section 10 permit is also required for structures or work outside the limits defined for navigable waters if the structure or work affects the course, location, or condition of the waterbody. Similar penalties as described for Section 404 of the CWA would apply.

H.2.3 Endangered Species Act

The purpose of ESA is, in part, to provide a means to conserve the ecosystems upon which endangered species and threatened species depend. USFWS and NMFS administer the ESA. The ESA requires these agencies to maintain lists of threatened and endangered species and affords substantial protection to listed species. NMFS's jurisdiction under ESA is limited to the protection of marine mammals, marine fishes, and anadromous fishes;[1] all other species are subject to USFWS jurisdiction. The ESA includes mechanisms that provide exceptions to take prohibitions identified in Section 9 of ESA. These are addressed in ESA Section 7 for federal actions and ESA Section 10 for nonfederal actions, as described in more detail below.

H.2.3.1 Section 7

Section 7 of ESA requires all federal agencies to ensure that any action they authorize (including issuance of any federal permit), fund, or carry out is not likely to jeopardize the continued existence of any species listed as threatened or endangered, or result in the destruction or adverse modification of habitat critical to the survival of such species. To ensure that its actions do not result in jeopardy to listed species or in the adverse modification of critical habitat,[2] each federal agency must consult with USFWS and/or NMFS regarding federal agency actions that may affect listed species regulated by the respective agencies. Consultation begins when the federal agency (often the USACE) submits a written request for initiation to USFWS or NMFS, along with the agency's biological assessment of its proposed action, and when USFWS or NMFS accepts that biological assessment as complete. If USFWS or NMFS concludes that the action is not likely to adversely affect a listed species, the action may be conducted without further review under the ESA. Otherwise, USFWS or NMFS must prepare a written biological opinion describing how the agency's action will affect the listed species and its critical habitat.

If the biological opinion concludes that the proposed action would jeopardize the continued existence of a listed species or adversely modify its critical habitat, the opinion will suggest "reasonable and prudent alternatives" that would avoid that result. If the biological opinion concludes that the proposed action would take a listed species but would not jeopardize its continued existence, the biological opinion will include an incidental take statement. *Incidental take* is take that is "incidental to, and not intended as part of, an otherwise lawful activity."[3] The incidental take statement specifies an amount of take that is allowed as a result of the action and whether reasonable and prudent measures may be required to minimize the impact of the take.

---

[1] *Anadromous fishes* are fish that spend part of their life cycle in the ocean and part in fresh water. NMFS has jurisdiction over anadromous fish that spend the majority of their life cycle in the ocean.

[2] *Critical habitat* is defined as specific geographic areas, whether occupied by listed species or not, that are determined to be essential for the conservation and management of listed species, and that have been formally described in the *Federal Register*.

[3] 64 Code of Federal Regulations 60728

Under Section 11 of the ESA, any person who knowingly violates the ESA may be assessed a civil penalty by the Secretary of the Interior of not more than $25,000 for each violation (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2018a).

H.2.3.2 Section 10

In cases where federal land, funding, or authorization is not required for an action by a nonfederal entity, the take of listed fish and wildlife species can be permitted by USFWS and/or NMFS through the Section 10 process. Private landowners, corporations, state agencies, local agencies, and other nonfederal entities may choose to obtain a Section 10(a)(1)(B) *incidental take permit* for take of federally listed fish and wildlife species "that is incidental to, but not the purpose of, otherwise lawful activities." A HCP must accompany an application for an incidental take permit. The purpose of the HCP, and the HCP's planning process, is to ensure that the effects of the authorized incidental take is adequately minimized and mitigated (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2005).

Section 10 also addresses the problem of maintaining regulatory assurances and provides certainty to landowners through the HCP process. It is known as the "No Surprises" regulation. Essentially, private landowners are assured through Section 10 (a)(1)(B) that if "unforeseen circumstances" arise, USFWS will not require the commitment of additional land, water, or financial compensation or additional restrictions on the use of land, water, or other natural resources beyond the level otherwise agreed to in the HCP without the consent of the permittee. The government will honor these assurances as long as a permittee is implementing the terms and conditions of the HCP, permit, and other associated documents in good faith (U.S. Fish and Wildlife 2005).

The take prohibition for listed plants is more limited than for listed fish and wildlife. Under Section 9(a)(2)(B) of the ESA, endangered plants are protected from "removal, reduction to possession, and malicious damage or destruction" in areas that are under federal jurisdiction. Section 9(a)(2)(B) of the ESA also provides protection to plants from removal, cutting, digging up, damage, or destruction where the action takes place in violation of any state law or regulation or in violation of a state criminal trespass law. Thus, the ESA does not prohibit the incidental take of federally listed plants on private or other nonfederal lands unless the action requires federal authorization or is in violation of state law. Although Section 10 incidental take permits are only required for wildlife and fish species, the Section 7(a)(2) prohibition against jeopardy applies to plants, and issuance of a Section 10(a)(1)(B) incidental take permit cannot result in jeopardy to a listed plant species.

Under Section 11 of the ESA, any person who knowingly violates the ESA may be assessed a civil penalty by the Secretary of the Interior of not more than $25,000 for each violation (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2018a).

H.2.4 Migratory Bird Treaty Act

The MBTA, as amended, implements various treaties and conventions between the United States and Canada, Japan, Mexico, and the former Soviet Union for the protection of migratory birds. Under the MBTA, taking, killing, or possessing migratory birds is unlawful, as is taking of any parts, nests, or eggs of such birds (16 U.S. Government Code [U.S.C.] § 703). Take is defined more narrowly under the MBTA than under ESA and includes only the death or injury of individuals of a migratory bird species or their eggs. As such, take under the MBTA does not include the concepts of harm and harassment as defined under ESA. The MBTA defines migratory birds broadly.

USFWS provides guidance regarding take of federally listed migratory birds in the *Habitat Conservation Planning and Incidental Take Permit Processing Handbook* (HCP Handbook)(U.S. Department of the Interior Fish and Wildlife Service and U.S. Department of Commerce National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration National Marine Fisheries Service 2016). According to the HCP Handbook, an ESA incidental take permit can authorize take of an MBTA species where such take is otherwise prohibited.

A person, association, partnership or corporation which violates the MBTA or its regulations is guilty of a misdemeanor and subject to a fine of up to $500, jail up to 6 months, or both. Anyone who knowingly takes a migratory bird and intends to, offers to, or actually sells or barters the bird is guilty of a felony, with fines up to $2,000, jail up to 2 years, or both (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 2018b).

H.2.5 National Environmental Policy Act

Federal agencies are required to consider all effects on the human environment of a proposed action under the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA). NEPA documentation of the environmental impact analysis (e.g., Environmental Impact Statement) must be made available for public notice and review. Issuance of an incidental take permit under ESA Section 10 constitutes a federal action and would require compliance with NEPA. The lead federal agency would be USFWS and/or NMFS.

H.2.6 National Historic Preservation Act

Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act of 1966, as amended (16 U.S.C. § 470 et seq.), requires federal agencies to take into account the effects of their actions proposed on properties eligible for inclusion in the National Register of Historic Places. *Properties* are defined as cultural resources, which includes prehistoric and historic sites, buildings, and structures that are listed on or eligible to be listed on the National Register of Historic Places. An undertaking is defined as a project, activity, or program funded in whole or in part under the direct or indirect jurisdiction of a federal agency, including those carried out by or on behalf of a federal agency; those carried out with federal financial assistance; those requiring a federal permit, license or approval; and those subject to state or local regulation administered pursuant to a delegation or approval by a federal agency. The issuance of a permit by a federal agency (such as for a Section 404 permit) is an undertaking subject to Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act.

H.2.7 National Flood Insurance Act

FEMA administers the National Flood Insurance Act, which requires that local governments covered by federal flood insurance enforce a floodplain management ordinance that specifies minimum requirements for any construction within the 100-year flood zone (one percent chance of occurring in a given year). FEMA delineates regional flooding hazard areas in Monterey County as part of the National Flood Insurance Program. FEMA prepares Flood Insurance Rate Maps (FIRMs) that that indicate areas prone to flooding or areas that have a 1 percent chance of flooding in any given year (100-year flood hazard zone). The 100-year flood hazard zones along the coast experience flooding coincident with high tide events typically combined with a wintertime storm surge. A permit is required before construction or development begins within any Special Flood Hazard Area. Permits are required to ensure that proposed development projects meet the requirements of the National

Flood Insurance Program and the community's floodplain management ordinance. Local municipalities are responsible for permitting development on floodplains within their jurisdictions.

H.3 State Laws and Regulations

H.3.1 Porter-Cologne Water Quality Control Act

Regulated by the local Regional Water Board, the Porter-Cologne Act is the primary state law concerning water quality. It authorizes the State Water Board and Regional Water Boards to prepare basin plans under the Porter-Cologne Act, federal CWA, and general provisions of California Water Code Section 13000 (California State Water Resources Control Board 2017). Through the basin plan, each Regional Water Board designates beneficial uses and establishes water quality objectives.

Under the Porter-Cologne Act, the Regional Water Board regulates the discharge of waste to waters of the state. The terms *discharge of waste* and *waters of the state* are broadly defined in the Porter-Cologne Act such that discharges of waste include fill, any material resulting from human activity, or any other discharge that may directly or indirectly affect waters of the state. While all waters of the United States that are within the borders of California are also waters of the state, the converse is not true—waters of the United States are more narrowly defined, with the result that, in practice, they are a subset of waters of the state.

All parties proposing to discharge waste that could affect waters of the state must file a report of waste discharge with the local Regional Water Board, which will then respond by issuing a WDR in a public hearing or by waiving them (with or without conditions). Any activity that results or may result in a discharge that directly or indirectly affects waters of the state or the beneficial uses of those waters are subject to WDRs, even if they are not also waters of the United States. Thus, the WDRs are more broadly applicable. The Central Coast Regional Water Board has produced a combined application form for Section 401 certification and waiver of WDRs to ensure that applicants do not need to file both a report of waste discharge and an application for Section 401 certification.

In addition to issuing Section 401 certifications on Section 404 applications to fill waters (see Section H.2.1.1, *Section 404*), the Regional Water Boards may also issue waste discharge requirements for such activities. Because the authority for waste discharge requirements is derived from the Porter-Cologne Act and not the CWA, waste discharge requirements may apply to a somewhat different range of aquatic resources than do Section 404 permits and Section 401 water quality certifications. Applicants that obtain a permit from USACE under Section 404 must also obtain certification of that permit by the Regional Water Board with jurisdiction over the project site. The Central Coast Regional Water Board has jurisdiction over the study area.

H.3.2 Lake or Streambed Alteration Agreement

CDFW has jurisdictional authority over streams, lakes, and wetland resources associated with these aquatic systems under California Fish and Game Code Section 1600 et seq., which was repealed and replaced in October 2003 with new Sections 1600–1616 that took effect on January 1, 2004. CDFW has the authority to regulate work that will "substantially divert or obstruct the natural flow of, or substantially change or use any material from the bed, channel, or bank of, any river, stream, or lake, or deposit or dispose of debris, waste, or other material containing crumbled, flaked, or ground pavement where it may pass into any river, stream, or lake." Activities of any person, state, or local governmental agency, or public utility are regulated by CDFW under Section 1602. Because CDFW includes under its jurisdiction streamside habitats that may not qualify as wetlands under the CWA definition, CDFW jurisdiction is typically broader than USACE jurisdiction.

The lake or streambed alteration agreement is not a permit, but rather a mutual agreement between CDFW and a project proponent made before construction. However, it serves a similar regulatory and protective function. CDFW determines a specific fee schedule and can impose conditions on the agreement to ensure no net loss of values or acreage of the stream, lake, associated wetlands, and associated riparian habitat. CDFW also uses the conditions on a lake or streambed alteration agreement to comply with other authorities it has as California's designated trustee agency for fish and wildlife. As such, many of the concerns raised by CDFW during streambed alteration agreement negotiations are related to special-status species. CDFW cannot provide a streambed alteration agreement until after the CEQA review is complete.

H.3.3 California Endangered Species Act

Regulated by CDFW, CESA prohibits take of wildlife and plants listed as threatened or endangered by the California Fish and Game Commission. Take is defined under the California Fish and Game Code (more narrowly than under ESA) as any action or attempt to "hunt, pursue, catch, capture, or kill." Therefore, take under CESA does not include "the taking of habitat alone or the impacts of the taking." Rather, the courts have affirmed that under CESA, "taking involves mortality."

Like ESA, CESA allows exceptions to the prohibition for take that occurs during otherwise lawful activities. The requirements of an application for incidental take under CESA are described in Section 2081 of the California Fish and Game Code. Incidental take of state-listed species may be authorized if an applicant submits an application that proposes an approach to minimize and "fully mitigate" the impacts of this take. Similar to ESA, CESA has penalties for violators and CDFW has the authority to impose civil liability as described under California Fish and Game Code 12159.5. CDFW may take civil judicial enforcement actions, seeking restoration and other types of injunctive relief, as well as civil penalties.

H.3.4 California Environmental Quality Act

Like NEPA, CEQA requires applicants to evaluate environmental impacts associated with a proposed project. In addition, CEQA requires significant environmental impacts associated with proposed projects to be reduced to a less-than-significant level through implementation of avoidance, minimization, or mitigation measures unless overriding considerations are identified and documented that make the mitigation measures or alternatives infeasible. CEQA applies to certain activities in California undertaken by either a public agency or a private entity that must receive some discretionary approval from a California government agency.

H.3.5 Sustainable Groundwater Management Act

On September 16, 2014, Governor Jerry Brown signed into law a three-bill legislative package, collectively known as the Sustainable Groundwater Management Act (SGMA).[4] Under SGMA (pronounced "sigma"), California established a framework for achieving sustainable

[4] The three bills were AB 1739 (Dickinson), SB 1168 (Pavley), and SB 1319 (Pavley).

groundwater management. The purpose of the legislation is focused on brining groundwater basins into balanced levels of pumping and recharge to reverse aquifer depletion, while supporting and enhancing local management of groundwater basins. As such, SGMA requires local agencies to form Groundwater Sustainability Agencies (GSAs) to manage basins sustainably, and requires those GSAs to develop and adopt Groundwater Sustainability Plans (GSPs).

As defined by Bulletin 118 (Department of Water Resources 1980), "A basin is subject to critical overdraft when continuation of present water management practices would probably result in significant adverse overdraft-related environmental, social, or economic impacts." Overdraft occurs where the average annual amount of groundwater extraction exceeds the long-term average annual supply of water to the basin. Effects of overdraft result can include seawater intrusion, land subsidence, groundwater depletion, and/or chronic lowering of groundwater levels. SGMA requires that all Bulletin 118 basins designated as medium- or high-priority that are subject to critical conditions of overdraft be managed under a GSP, or coordinated GSPs, by January 31, 2020. All other medium- and high-priority basins must be managed under a GSP, or coordinated GSPs, by January 31, 2022 (Department of Water Resources 2016).

SGMA authorizes the intervention of the State Water Resources Control Board in the event that a GSA is not formed for a high- or medium-priority basin, or that an inadequate GSP is submitted for those basins.

H.3.6 California Coastal Act

Administered by the California Coastal Commission, the California Coastal Act outlines standards for development within the Coastal Zone. Their jurisdiction encompasses 1.5 million acres of land and stretches from 3 miles at sea to a defined inland boundary. The California Coastal Act is the primary law that governs the decisions of the California Coastal Commission. Development activities in the Coastal Zone, such as building construction, land division, and activities that change the intensity of use of land or public access to coastal waters, require a coastal development permit from the California Coastal Commission.

H.3.7 California State Lands Act

Administered by the CSLC, the California State Lands Act summarizes the standards to sell, lease, or dispose of the public lands owned by the state or under its control, including not only school lands but tidelands, submerged lands, swamp and overflowed lands, and beds of navigable rivers and lakes. CSLC has statutory authority (as described under Division 6 of the California Public Resources Code) to approve appropriate uses for public property rights within these sovereign lands, such as water-borne commerce, navigation, fisheries, open space, recreation, or other recognized public trust purposes. CSLC management responsibilities include activities within submerged lands (from the mean high-tide line) as well as activities within 3 nautical miles offshore. These activities include oil and gas development, harbor development and management oversight, construction and operation of offshore pipelines or other facilities, dredging, reclamation, use of filled sovereign lands, topographical and geological studies, and other activities that occur on these lands. Development activities in this jurisdiction would require either a CSLC survey permit or a lease agreement.

H.3.8 Water Rights

Regulated by the State Water Board, the California Water Code requires a water right to take water from a lake, river, stream, or creek, or from underground supplies for a beneficial use (e.g., fishing, farming, or industry). Some modifications to the dams and corresponding reservoirs on the Salinas River may require a water right.

H.3.9 Other California Fish and Game Code Regulations

H.3.9.1 California Fully Protected Species

In the 1960s, before CESA was enacted, the California legislature identified specific species for protection under the California Fish and Game Code. These *fully protected* species may not be taken or possessed at any time, and no licenses or permits may be issued for their take except for collecting these species for necessary scientific research and relocation of bird species for the protection of livestock. Fully protected species are described in Sections 3511 (birds), 4700 (mammals), 5050 (reptiles and amphibians), and 5515 (fish) of the California Fish and Game Code. These protections state that "…no provision of this code or any other law shall be construed to authorize the issuance of permits or licenses to take any fully protected [bird], [mammal], [reptile or amphibian], [fish]." The only allowance for take of fully protected species is through an incidental take permit from CDFW through an approved natural community conservation plan. Similar to CESA, violations associated with California fully protected species as described under California Fish and Game Code 12159.5, are administered by CDFW, and include civil judicial enforcement actions and civil penalties.

H.3.9.2 California Fish and Game Code 3503 (Bird Nests)

Section 3503 of the California Fish and Game Code makes it "unlawful to take, possess, or needlessly destroy the nests or eggs of any bird, except as otherwise provided by this code or any regulation made pursuant thereto." Therefore, CDFW may issue permits authorizing take.

H.3.9.3 California Fish and Game Code 3503.5 (Birds of Prey)

Section 3503.5 of the California Fish and Game Code prohibits the take, possession, or destruction of any birds of prey or their nests or eggs "except as otherwise provided by this code or any regulation adopted pursuant thereto." CDFW may issue permits authorizing take of birds of prey or their nests or eggs pursuant to CESA or the Natural Community Conservation Planning Act.

H.4 References

California Department of Water Resources. 1980. Groundwater Basins in California, Bulletin 118-80. January.

California Department of Water Resources. 2016. California's Groundwater: Working Toward Sustainability, Bulletin 118–Interim Update 2016. December 22.

U.S. Department of the Interior Fish and Wildlife Service and U.S. Department of Commerce National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration National Marine Fisheries Service. 2016. *Habitat Conservation Planning and Incidental Take Permit Processing Handbook*. December.

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. 2018. CWA Section 404 Enforcement Overview. Available: https://www.epa.gov/cwa-404/cwa-section-404-enforcement-overview#violations. Accessed: December 2018.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 2018a. Endangered Species Act, Section 11. Available: https://www.fws.gov/endangered/laws-policies/section-11.html. Accessed: December 2018.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 2018b. Migratory Bird Treaty Act. Available: https://www.fws.gov/alaska/ambcc/ambcc/treaty_act.htm. Accessed: December 2018.

Appendix I

Grant Opportunities

Sponsor	Title	Key Components	Upcoming Deadline
Federal Funding			
Association of Fish & Wildlife Agencies and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS)	Multistate Conservation Grant Program	Funds projects that address regional or national priorities and undertaken by state fish and wildlife agencies.	7/1/2019
California Department of Fish and Wildlife (CDFW) and USFWS	Conservation Grant	Provides financial assistance to states and territories to implement conservation projects for listed species and at-risk species. Funded activities include habitat restoration, species status surveys, public education and outreach, captive propagation and reintroduction, nesting surveys, genetic studies, and development of management plans.	Not specified
CDFW and USFWS	Habitat Conservation Planning Assistance Grant	Provides funds to states and territories to support the development of habitat conservation plans (HCPs) through support of baseline surveys and inventories, document preparation, outreach, and similar planning activities.	Not specified
CDFW and USFWS	HCP Land Acquisition Grant	Provide funding to states and territories to acquire land associated with approved HCPs. Grants do not fund the mitigation required of an HCP permittee; instead, they support acquisition of land by the state or local governments to complement mitigation.	Not specified
CDFW and USFWS	Recovery Land Acquisition Grants	Provides funds to states and territories for the acquisition of habitat for endangered and threatened species in support of draft and approved recovery plans. Acquisition of habitat to secure long-term protection is often an essential element of a comprehensive recovery effort for a listed species.	Not specified
Commission for Environmental Cooperation	North American Partnership for Environmental Community Action	Project types can include, but are not limited to, building capacity, pilot projects, transfer of innovative technologies, conducting outreach or education, sharing best practices, training environmental leaders, engaging youth on environmental activities, reducing risks to the environment, and many other types of non-regulatory efforts.	Not specified
Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA)	Flood Mitigation Assistance (FMA)	FMA provides funding to states for projects and planning that reduces or eliminates long-term risk of flood damage to structures insured under the NFIP. FMA funding is also available for management costs. FEMA requires state and local governments to develop and adopt hazard mitigation plans as a condition for receiving certain types of non-emergency disaster assistance, including funding for FMA mitigation projects.	1/31/2019

Sponsor	Title	Key Components	Upcoming Deadline
FEMA	Pre-Disaster Mitigation (PDM) and FMA grant programs	The goal is to reduce overall risk to the population and structures from future hazard events, while also reducing reliance on federal funding in future disasters. This program awards planning and project grants and provides opportunities for raising public awareness about reducing future losses before disaster strikes. Mitigation planning is a key process used to break the cycle of disaster damage, reconstruction, and repeated damage. PDM grants are funded annually by Congressional appropriations and are awarded on a nationally competitive basis.	1/31/2019
National Fish and Wildlife Foundation (NFWF)	Acres for America	Aims to conserve lands of national significance, protect critical fish and wildlife habitat, and benefit people and local economies.	11/1/2019
NFWF	California Flow Restoration Accounting Fund	Goals are to develop technical capacity and provide monitoring support for organizations, agencies, and funders to effectively account for the impacts of flow enhancement projects on stream discharge, habitat, water quality, and survival of native fish and wildlife.	Not specified
NFWF	Five Star and Urban Waters Restoration Grant Program	Projects include a variety of ecological improvements along with targeted community outreach, education, and stewardship. Approximately $1,700,000 is available nationwide for projects meeting program priorities. Awards range from $20,000 to $50,000 with an average size of $30,000, and 40–50 grants are awarded per year. Projects should span 12–18 months with a start date in July 2019; applicants requesting more than $30,000 should propose projects longer than 12 months.	1/31/2019
NFWF	National Coastal Resilience Fund	Funding to advance identified priorities for restoring and strengthening natural systems so they can protect coastal communities from the impacts of storms and floods and enable them to recover more quickly, while also enhancing habitats for important fish and wildlife populations.	8/1/2019
NFWF	National Wildlife Refuge Friends Grant Program	Designed to build critical community support for local National Wildlife Refuges. The National Wildlife Refuge System's existence is credited to citizens eager to protect America's natural resources, and Refuge Friends groups continue this legacy. NFWF anticipates releasing the National Wildlife Refuge Friends 2019 request for proposals in early June 2019.	Not specified
NFWF	Western Freshwater Restoration Fund	The goal is to expand the use of water transactions to increase tributary flows for the benefit of protecting or enhancing fish and wildlife habitat and water quality. The basic attributes of a transaction are a voluntary agreement between two or more parties under which water historically diverted under a water right is left or released to instream flows. The Western Freshwater Restoration Fund will award approximately $850,000 in grants in 2018.	9/1/2019

Sponsor	Title	Key Components	Upcoming Deadline
NFWF and Wells Fargo	Resilient Communities Program	Through improvements to natural features and enhanced community capacity, the program will help communities prepare for future impacts associated with sea-level rise, sustain appropriate water quantity and quality, and enhance forest conservation. Approximately $2 million is available in 2019. Grants in this category will range from $200,000 to $500,000.	2/19/2019 (pre-proposal)
NFWF, Bureau of Land Management, USFWS, and U.S. Forest Service	Pulling Together Initiative	Funding to promote the conservation of natural habitats by preventing, managing, or eradicating invasive and noxious plant species. Approximately $420,000 is expected to be available for grant awards in 2018.	7/1/2019
National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA)	Community-Based Restoration Program (CRP)	NOAA is seeking proposals from non-federal partners for habitat restoration projects that will restore coastal ecosystems. The selected projects will support species recovery and help rebuild fish populations, and likely yield community and economic benefits. Since CRP began in 1996, roughly $162 million has been contributed to more than 2,000 projects.	4/16/2019
NOAA	Fiscal Year 2019 (FY19) Marine Debris Prevention Program	Funding to support eligible organizations to conduct research directly related to marine debris through field, laboratory, and modeling experiments. Research may explore the ecological risk associated with marine debris and determine debris exposure levels, examine the fate and transport of marine debris, and/or quantify habitat impacts resulting from marine debris and the gains in ecosystem services that result when debris is removed. Funding of up to $1,500,000 is expected to be available for grants in FY19. Typical awards will range from $150,000 to $250,000.	End of 2019
NOAA	National Estuarine Research Reserve System (NERRS) Land Acquisition and Construction Program for FY19	NOAA anticipates approximately $1.9 million in FY19 will be available to designated lead Reserve agencies or universities in coastal states for approximately 5–10 construction and acquisition projects. Awards are expected to range from approximately $20,000 to $800,000 per project, with project periods typically covering 12–36 months, depending on the availability of funds.	2/8/2019
NOAA	NOAA Ecological Effects of Sea Level Rise Program Grant	Funding to improve adaptation and planning in response to regional and local effects of sea level rise and coastal inundation through targeted research on key technologies, natural and nature-based infrastructure, physical and biological processes, and model evaluation. It is anticipated that projects funded under this announcement will have a start date of September 1, 2019. Approximately three to six projects, 2–3 years in duration, are expected to be funded at a level not to exceed $250,000 per year per proposal.	2/28/2019

Sponsor	Title	Key Components	Upcoming Deadline
NOAA	Species Recovery Grants to States	Supports management, research, monitoring, and/or outreach activities that have direct conservation benefits for listed species under the Endangered Species Act within that state. Recently delisted species, proposed, and candidate species are also eligible.	11/1/2019
NOAA	The Coastal and Estuarine Land Conservation Program	Lands selected to be protected through the program are ecologically important or possess other coastal conservation values, such as historic features, scenic views, or recreational opportunities.	Not specified
National Park Service (NPS)	Pacific Coast Science and Learning Center	Research Learning Centers are field stations for many collaborative research activities, providing researchers with laboratory, office space, dormitory facilities, and access to park research priorities and scientists. Each center's education specialist works with park interpreters and partners to make new information about park resources available to the public and park management. Also provided are hands-on learning experiences that connect researchers with learners of all ages. The award for each fellowship, contingent upon the availability of federal funds, will be in the form of a grant or cooperative agreement of $48,000 per year ($40,000 in federal dollars and $8,000 in matching dollars). The award provided to each fellow is for salary (stipend), living expenses, tuition, and travel necessary to carry out the proposed research and to attend the annual Fellows meeting (at rotating locations).	Not specified
NPS	Rivers, Trails and Conservation Assistance program (RTCA)	Supports community-led natural resource conservation and outdoor recreation projects across the nation.	6/30/2019
Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS)	Agricultural Conservation Easement Program (ACEP)/ Wetland Reserve Easement (WRE)	Provides financial and technical assistance to help conserve agricultural lands and wetlands and their related benefits. Under the ACEP component, NRCS helps state and local governments protect working agricultural lands and limit non-agricultural uses of the land. Under the WRE component, NRCS helps to restore, protect, and enhance enrolled wetlands.	Not specified

Sponsor	Title	Key Components	Upcoming Deadline
NRCS	Conservation Innovation Grants (CIG)	Through the NRCS CIG program, public and private grantees develop the tools, technologies, and strategies to support next-generation conservation efforts on working lands and develop market-based solutions to resource challenges. Grantees leverage the federal investment by at least matching it.	1/1/2020
NRCS	Environmental Quality Incentives Program (EQIP)	EQIP provides funding for solutions that conserve natural resources for the future while also improving agricultural operations.	11/1/2019
NRCS	Regional Conservation Partnership Program (RCPP)	RCPP encourages partners to join in efforts with producers to increase the restoration and sustainable use of soil, water, wildlife, and related natural resources on regional or watershed scales. NRCS has selected 91 RCPP projects for funding in 2018. In all, NRCS plans to invest approximately $220 million in projects across the country.	Not specified
U.S. Bureau of Reclamation (Reclamation)	WaterSMART Cooperative Watershed Management Program (CWMP) Phase I	Contributes to the WaterSMART strategy by providing funding to watershed groups to encourage diverse stakeholders to form local solutions to address their water management needs. For Phase I projects, Reclamation will award a successful applicant up to $50,000 per year for a period of up to 2 years with no non-Federal cost-share required. Reclamation will award up to $100,000 per project over a 2-year period. For Phase II projects, applicants must contribute at least 50% of the total project costs.	4/1/2019
U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA) Farm Service Agency	Farmable Wetlands Program (FWP)	Designed to restore previously farmed wetlands and wetland buffer to improve both vegetation and water flow. FWP is a voluntary program to restore up to one million acres of farmable wetlands and associated buffers. Participants must agree to restore the wetlands, establish plant cover, and to not use enrolled land for commercial purposes. Plant cover may include plants that are partially submerged or specific types of trees.	Not specified
USDA Farm Service Agency	Grassland Reserve Program	Conservation program that emphasizes support for working grazing operations, enhancement of plant and animal biodiversity, and protection of grassland under threat of conversion to other uses.	Not specified
U.S. Department of Defense (DoD)	Environmental Security Technology Certification Program (ESTCP)	Funding for innovative technology demonstrations that address DoD environmental and installation energy requirements. It is expected that multiple awards totaling approximately $12 million will result, depending on availability of funds.	3/7/2019

Sponsor	Title	Key Components	Upcoming Deadline
U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA)	Environmental Education (EE) Grants Program	An announcement about the Fiscal Year 2020 EE Grant Program will be made in fall 2019.	Not specified
USEPA	Office of Wetlands, Oceans & Watersheds, Watershed Funding Resources	Supports the Clean Water Act by promoting effective and responsible water use, wastewater treatment, and disposal and management and by encouraging the protection and restoration of watersheds. Provided are regulatory standards, voluntary management approaches, and financial and technical assistance to states, tribes, communities, and regulated entities to protect human health and aquatic ecosystems, reduce flooding, and protect the nation's infrastructure investment.	Not specified
USEPA	Urban Waters Small Grants	Since the inception of this program in 2012, it has awarded approximately $6.6 million in grants to 114 organizations across the country and Puerto Rico. The grants are competed and awarded every 2 years, with individual award amounts of up to $60,000. Currently there is no open request for proposals.	Not specified
USEPA	Wetland Program Development Grant (WDPG)	WPDGs provide eligible applicants an opportunity to conduct projects that promote the coordination and acceleration of research, investigations, experiments, training, demonstrations, surveys, and studies relating to the causes, effects, extent, prevention, reduction and elimination of water pollution. Proposals are due in spring.	5/1/2019
USFWS	National Coastal Wetlands Conservation Grant Program	Annually provides grants of up to $1 million to coastal and Great Lakes states, as well as U.S. territories to protect, restore, and enhance coastal wetland ecosystems and associated uplands.	Not specified
USFWS	North American Wetlands Conservation Act (NAWCA) Small Grants Program	NAWCA grants increase bird populations and wetland habitat, while supporting local economies and American traditions such as hunting, fishing, bird watching, family farming, and cattle ranching. Wetlands protected by NAWCA provide valuable benefits such as flood control, reducing coastal erosion, improving water and air quality, and recharging groundwater.	11/1/2019
USFWS	NAWCA Standard Grant	Grants made to increase bird populations and wetland habitat, while supporting local economies and American traditions such as hunting, fishing, bird watching, family farming, and cattle ranching.	2/23/2019

Sponsor	Title	Key Components	Upcoming Deadline
USFWS	Tribal Wildlife Grants	Funding opportunity for federally recognized tribal governments to develop and implement programs for the benefit of wildlife and their habitat, including species of Native American cultural or traditional importance and species that are not hunted or fished.	Not specified
USFWS	FY19 Recovery Implementation Fund Grants	Provides funding for projects that will contribute to the recovery of USFWS-managed endangered and threatened species and limited to projects carrying out actions described in a species approved recovery plan, in the implementation schedule of a species approved recovery plan, actions recommended in a completed 5-year status review of the species or in a spotlight species action plan, or projects documenting species response to climate change.	7/1/2019
Mixed (Federal, State, Local, and/or Private) Funding			
California Fish Passage Forum (Forum)	2020 Funding Opportunity	The Forum, one of 20 nationally recognized fish habitat partnerships, annually seeks project proposals to award a total of \$100,000–\$150,000 toward fish passage projects in California that advance the Forum's mission to protect and revitalize anadromous fish populations in California by restoring connectivity of freshwater habitats throughout their historical range. Preference is given to a barrier that can be fully remediated within 24 months, is listed in the Passage Assessment Database (PAD), is a priority identified by state and federal agencies, is listed in a key restoration plan for the region, has alignment with the Forum's nine overall objectives, has alignment with national priorities, and has alignment with USFWS climate change strategies.	10/1/2019
NOAA and Scripps Institution of Oceanography at the University of California, San Diego	California Sea Grant	California Sea Grant issues competitive state and federal research awards that meet three strategic focus areas: Healthy Coastal and Marine Ecosystems, Sustainable Fisheries and Aquaculture, and Resilient Coastal Communities and Economies. The turnaround time between the date of the request (proposal submission) and beginning of the project is typically 2 months.	Multiple
State Water Resources Control Board (SWRCB)	Clean Water Act State Revolving Loan Fund	This program offers low-cost financing for a variety of water quality projects. The program has significant financial assets, capable of financing projects from <\$1 million to >\$100 million.	Not specified

Sponsor	Title	Key Components	Upcoming Deadline
SWRCB Federal 319 Program	Nonpoint Source and Water Quality Planning Programs	Funding to help to reduce nonpoint source pollution. Projects that qualify for funding must be conducted within the state's nonpoint source pollution priority watersheds. Project proposals that address Total Maximum Daily Load implementation and those that address problems in impaired waters are favored in the selection process. In addition, the program funds projects that implement forest management measures on forest lands to improve water quality. There is also a focus on implementing management activities that lead to reduction and/or prevention of pollutants that threaten or impair surface and ground waters.	12/1/2019
State Funding			
California Coastal Commission	Whale Tail Grants	Supports programs that teach California's children and the general public to value and take action to improve the health of the state's marine and coastal resources. Adopt-A-Beach® programs, as well as other beach maintenance and coastal habitat restoration projects that have an educational component, are also eligible for these grants. This program focuses on reaching communities that are currently poorly served in terms of marine and coastal education.	Not specified
California Department of Conservation	California Farmland Conservancy Program	This statewide grant program supports local efforts to establish agricultural conservation easements and planning projects for the purpose of preserving important agricultural land resources.	9/1/2019
California Department of Conservation	Watershed Coordinator Grant Program	Grants for watershed coordinators to facilitate collaborative efforts to improve and sustain the health of California’s watersheds. Watershed coordinators successfully facilitated collaborations between diverse groups of stakeholders and cultivated numerous partnerships in order to address multiple social and ecological issues on a watershed scale, improving the efficiency with which state funds were utilized to meet multiple watershed improvement and management goals.	2/15/2019
California Department of Parks and Recreation	California State Parks Habitat Conservation Fund	Provides funding for nature interpretation programs to bring urban residents into park and wildlife areas, protection of various plant and animal species, and acquisition and development of wildlife corridors and trails. Approximately $2 million each year is allocated to cities, counties, and districts. The program requires a 50% match.	10/1/2019
California Department of Parks and Recreation	CAL FIRE Greenhouse Gas Reduction Fund	Provides funding for projects that proactively restore forest health to reduce greenhouse gases, protect headwaters and upper watersheds, promote long-term storage of carbon in forests, minimize the loss of forest carbon from large, intense wildfires, and further the goals of the California Global Warming Solutions Act of 2006 (AB 32).	Not specified

Sponsor	Title	Key Components	Upcoming Deadline
California Department of Water Resources	Urban Streams Restoration Program (USRP)	The USRP goals include (1) protecting, enhancing and restoring the natural, ecological value of streams; (2) preventing future property damage caused by flooding and bank erosion; and (3) promoting community involvement, education, and riverine stewardship.	3/15/2019
California Natural Resources Agency	California River Parkways	The purpose of this program is to support the acquisition, restoration, protection, and development of river parkways. River Parkways are defined as outdoor areas adjacent to a river or stream, set apart to conserve scenic, natural, open space, or recreational values to afford public access to open space, low impact recreational activities, and/or wildlife habitat. Projects must involve natural creeks, streams, and/or rivers, even if they flow only during the rainy season, or channelized or culverted creeks, streams, and/or rivers. Projects must provide public access or be a component of a larger parkway plan that provides public access.	9/1/2019
California Natural Resources Agency	Environmental Enhancement and Mitigation Program	Approximately $6.7 million is available for projects that offset negative environmental impacts from transportation projects (e.g., urban forestry, acquisitions to project resource lands). Solicitation each April; awards each March. Projects must fall within one of three categories: highway landscape and urban forestry, resource lands, or roadside recreation.	3/1/2019
California Natural Resources Agency	Urban Greening Grant Program	Approximately $19.0 million in awards will be funded by this program through the Greenhouse Gas Reduction Fund. Applicants submitting the most competitive proposals will be invited to participate in the next level of the competitive process, anticipated Spring 2019.	2/28/19
California State Coastal Conservancy (SCC)	Climate Ready Program	Multi-benefit projects that use natural systems to assist communities in adapting to the impacts of climate change. In December 2018, SCC awarded 12 projects with $3.8 million total for the fifth round of Climate Ready grants.	Not specified
California SCC	Explore the Coast	Provides funding for projects along the coast. Grant applications are due April 8, 2019. There is no minimum grant size, but the maximum grant award is $50,000. If funding is available, SCC will offer these grants every year. Since 2013, SCC has awarded over $5 million in 176 separate grants (updated fall 2018).	4/8/2019
California SCC	Proposition 1 grants	Proposition 1 grants fund multi-benefit ecosystem and watershed protection and restoration projects. Priority project types include water sustainability improvements, anadromous fish habitat enhancement, wetland restoration, and urban greening.	4/30/2019

Sponsor	Title	Key Components	Upcoming Deadline
California SCC	Proposition 68	Funding under the California Drought, Water, Parks, Climate, Coastal Protection, and Outdoor Access for All Act of 2018 ("Prop 68"), approved by voters in June 2018. The SCC's Prop 68 program guidelines are available for public review and comment. These guidelines explain the process and criteria that the Conservancy will use to solicit applications, evaluate proposals, and award grants with Prop 68 funds under the SCC's programs.	Not specified
California SCC	Sea Otter Recovery Grant	Eligible projects include research, science, protection projects, or programs related to the federal Sea Otter Recovery Plan or improving the nearshore ocean ecosystem, including, but not limited to, program activities to reduce sea otter mortality. Last year SCC had approximately $118,000 available for projects that met the fund's objectives.	9/1/2019
California State Parks	Proposition 68: Statewide Park Development and Community Revitalization Program	Competitive grants aimed at creating new parks and new recreation opportunities in critically underserved communities across California. Maximum grant is $8,500,000; minimum grant is $200,000.	8/5/2019
CDFW	California State Duck Stamp Project	Funding for waterfowl conservation purposes (acquisition, restoration, enhancement, creation and research) to nonprofit organizations, local government agencies, state departments and federal agencies (Fish and Game Code § 3702). Up to $1,135,000 may be allocated for projects on a fiscal year basis.	1/1/2020
CDFW	Environmental Enhancement Fund	Grant program is administered by the CDFW's Office of Spill Prevention and Response. An enhancement project is a project that acquires habitat for preservation, or improves habitat quality and ecosystem function above baseline conditions, and meets these criteria: is within or immediately adjacent to state waters; has measurable outcomes within a predetermined timeframe; is designed to acquire, restore, or improve habitat or restore ecosystem function, or both, to benefit fish and wildlife.	11/1/2019
CDFW	Fisheries Restoration Grant Program	This program was established in 1981 in response to rapidly declining populations of wild salmon and steelhead trout and deteriorating fish habitat in California. This competitive grant program has invested millions of dollars to support projects from sediment reduction to watershed education throughout coastal California. Contributing partners include federal and local governments, tribes, water districts, fisheries organizations, watershed restoration groups, the California Conservation Corps, AmeriCorps, and private landowners. The 2019 Fisheries Habitat Restoration Proposal Solicitation Notice has been released for public comments. The deadline for comments is 5:00 p.m. on Friday, February 1, 2019.	4/16/2019

Sponsor	Title	Key Components	Upcoming Deadline
CDFW	Proposition 1 Restoration Grant Programs: Watershed Restoration Grant	Proposition 1 provides funding to meet California Water Action Plan objectives of more reliable water supplies, restoration of important species and habitat, and more resilient, sustainably managed water resources system that can better withstand inevitable and unforeseen pressures in the coming decades. The Watershed Restoration Grant Program focuses on water quality, river, and watershed protection and restoration projects of statewide importance outside of the Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta.	Not specified
Pacific Gas & Electric	Better Together Resilient Communities	In an effort to promote local resilience to climate change, PG&E is investing $2 million over 5 years through this program to support local climate resilience initiatives.	5/1/2019
SWRCB	Proposition 1 Storm Water Grant Program	For Round 2 Implementation Grants, approximately $90 million is available for multi-benefit storm water management projects which may include, but shall not be limited to, green infrastructure, rainwater and storm water capture projects, and stormwater treatment facilities.	Summer 2019
Wildlife Conservation Board (WCB)	Proposition 1: California Stream Flow Enhancement Program	Provides funding to projects that enhance stream flow pursuant to the objectives of Proposition 1 (Water Quality, Supply, and Infrastructure Act of 2014), the California Water Action Plan, the State Wildlife Action Plan, the fulfillment of WCB's mission, and which meet the priorities specified by WCB.	9/1/2019
WCB	Climate Adaptation and Resiliency Program	Approximately $20 million is available for local assistance, payable from the Greenhouse Gas Reduction Fund. Program funds are to be used for climate adaptation and resiliency projects that will result in enduring benefits to wildlife.	5/1/2019
WCB	Ecosystem Restoration on Agricultural Lands	This funding assists landowners in developing wildlife friendly practices on their properties that can be sustained and co-exist with agricultural operations. In California, a large number of wildlife species are dependent on privately owned agricultural lands for habitat. Agricultural lands can provide significant habitat and connectivity with protected wildlife areas.	Not specified
WCB	WCB Forest Conservation Program	Provides funding to achieve forest conservation efforts in a manner that promotes ecological integrity and economic stability. Applicants are encouraged to use the principles as benchmarks in completing the project application as they will be used as part of the evaluation and ranking process.	Continuous

Sponsor	Title	Key Components	Upcoming Deadline
WCB	WCB Habitat Enhancement and Restoration Program	Funding for native fisheries restoration, restoration of wetlands that fall outside the jurisdiction of the Inland Wetland Conservation Program such as coastal, tidal, or fresh water habitats, other native habitat restoration projects including coastal scrub, grasslands, and threatened and endangered species habitats, in-stream restoration projects including removal of fish passage barriers and other obstructions, and other projects that improve native habitat quality within the state.	Continuous
WCB	WCB Land Acquisition Program	The WCB acquires real property or rights in real property on behalf of CDFW and can also grant funds to other governmental entities or nonprofit organizations to acquire real property or rights in real property.	Continuous
Local/Regional Funding			
California Landscape Conservation Cooperative (CA LCC)	CA LCCProjects	(No current funding opportunities.)	Not specified
Clif Bar Family Foundation	Small Grants Program	These grants are awarded for general organizational support as well as funding for specific projects. Applications are reviewed three times per year. Grants awarded during a particular cycle will be announced at the beginning of the following cycle.	February 1, June 1, and October 1, 2019
Honda Marine Science Foundation	Honda Marine Science Foundation Grants	Initiative to help restore marine ecosystems and facilitate climate change resilience. The foundation supports efforts that improve and preserve coastal areas for future generations. Selects an estimated four to six grantees per year. With an estimated $300,000 available in grant funds annually, grant amounts may range from $25,000 to $75,000.	10/1/2019
Private Funding			
BirdNote	Birdnote Next Generation Grants	Each year, BirdNote Next Generation awards grants to three to four environmental education programs to incorporate BirdNote media into their curricula. BirdNote also contracts with three to four media producers each year to create new media about, by, and for young listeners. Educational program for young people between the ages of 6 and 18. Focus on getting kids out into nature or help them learn about birds, science, or conservation in the classroom. Grants of up to $5,000.	11/1/2019
Captain Planet Foundation	Captain Planet Foundation Grants	Captain Planet Foundation™ invests in high-quality, solution-based programs that embrace STEM learning and empower youth to become local and global environmental change-makers.	July and January 2019

Sponsor	Title	Key Components	Upcoming Deadline
Cornell Lab of Ornithology	Land Trust Bird Conservation Initiative	Grant program in 2019 will fund six grants—three each at $5,000 and $20,000. Grants will support land trusts and their partners in accomplishing bird conservation on private lands through activities such as strategic planning, outreach, habitat management, stewardship, and capacity building. In addition to funding, the Cornell Lab of Ornithology will provide technical support and advice to recipients.	3/1/2019
Ducks Unlimited	Ducks Unlimited Grants	Grant opportunities for restoring grasslands, replanting forests, restoring watersheds, working with landowners, working with partners, acquiring land, conservation easements, management agreements, and geographic information systems.	Not specified
EarthWatch Institute	Research projects	Earthwatch's overarching goal is to support research projects that produce rigorous, relevant, and impactful science; address global change; and actively involve citizen-scientist participants. Annual budgets range between $20,000 and $80,000, with most of this covering participant expenses. All proposals must be submitted by a researcher with a PhD, who is planning to function as the project's principal investigator.	6/1/2019
Hewlett Foundation	Hewlett Foundation Environment Program	Funds grants to protect people and places threatened by a warming planet by addressing climate change globally, expanding clean energy, and conserving the North American West.	Not specified
Home Depot Foundation	Home Depot Foundation Grants	Grant awards up to $5,000 to 501c designated organizations (recognized and in good standing with the IRS for a minimum of 1 year) and tax-exempt public service agencies in the United States that are using the power of volunteers to improve the community. Grants are given in the form of The Home Depot gift cards for the purchase of tools, materials, or services and are required to be completed within 6 months of approval date.	12/31/2019
National Geographic Society	Making the Case for Nature	Funding for determining effective ways to market wildlife to inspire positive action to save species by applying principles of science communication. Projects should advance the science of nature communication by systematically testing visual and marketing methods; visualizing complex data; or developing and evaluating new techniques directed to motivate action to conserve wildlife. Applicants may request up to $50,000. Successful applicants may use awarded funds over 1 or 2 years.	Not specified
National Marine Sanctuary Foundation	Ernest F. Hollings Ocean Awareness Trust Fund	The foundation promotes citizen science, research, conservation, education and community engagement to protect coral reefs and marine habitats, preserve places of cultural significance, and conserve our maritime history and heritage.	Not specified

Sponsor	Title	Key Components	Upcoming Deadline
North Star Science and Technology	Transmitter Grant Program	This program’s goal is to provide a total of eight Phoenix tags, which are to be used to track and monitor the movements of birds anywhere in the world to improve scientific understanding of the target species and the ability of resource managers to conserve them.	4/20/2019
Packard Foundation	Packard Foundation Conservation and Science Program	Funds environmental education programs that enhance classroom learning, expose children and families to the diverse environmental landscapes and resources found in the local area, and offer hands-on learning opportunities that promote environmental stewardship.	Not specified
Patagonia	Patagonia Environmental Grants	Grants typically range between $2,500 and $15,000.	5/1/2019
Rose Foundation	California Wildlands Grassroots Fund	Supports conservationists advocating for the permanent protection, including restoration and stewardship, of intact wildlands on both public and private lands to help preserve California’s wilderness and native biological diversity.	2/15/2019
SeaWorld & Busch Gardens	SeaWorld & Busch Gardens Conservation Fund	The fund's areas of focus are species research, habitat protection, conservation education, animal rescue and rehabilitation. Although there is no limit to the size of the application request, most grants range between $10,000 and $25,000.	4/30/2019
Stewardship Council	Foundation for Youth Investment	Provides grant-making, capacity-building, and training to outdoor professionals and thought-leaders.	11/30/2019
Temper of the Times Foundation	Temper of the Times Foundation Grants	The foundation does not provide grants to individuals, for-profit organizations, or government agencies. Grants are typically between $5,000 and $15,000 and are awarded for projects that will lead to measurable outcomes for wildland ecosystem conservation and restoration. Grants may be used to fund the production of print, radio, or television ads, to pay for advertising space or airtime, or to produce or distribute pamphlets, books, videos, or press packets.	12/15/2019
The National Geographic Network of Alliances for Geographic Education	National Geographic Society Education Foundation Teacher Grants	Early career grants are designed to offer less experienced individuals an opportunity to lead a project in the areas of conservation, education, research, storytelling, or technology. Early Career Grants are typically funded for between $5,000 and $10,000, but you can apply for as little as a few thousand dollars.	Not specified

Sponsor	Title	Key Components	Upcoming Deadline
Tiffany & Co. Foundation	Tiffany & Co. Foundation Grants	Funding for organizations dedicated to the stewardship of natural resources in the areas of responsible mining and coral conservation. Specifically, the Foundation promotes responsible mining through remediation, land preservation and standards-setting efforts; and coral conservation through key research and targeted educational outreach.	Not specified
Wildlife Conservation Society	Climate Adaptation Fund	Grant partners implement ground-breaking, science-based projects, using traditional and new conservation tools applied in strategic ways to help wildlife and ecosystems adapt to a range of climate impacts. The fund provides a total of $2.5 million in grant awards between $50,000 and $250,000 to conservation non-profit organizations each year. Request for proposal will be released in February 2019.	4/1/2019